

# Look-Ahead Removal for Top-Down Tree Transducers

Joost Engelfriet<sup>1</sup>, Sebastian Maneth<sup>2</sup>, and Helmut Seidl<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> LIACS, Leiden University, The Netherlands  
engelfri@liacs.nl

<sup>2</sup> School of Informatics, University of Edinburgh, United Kingdom  
smaneth@inf.ed.ac.uk

<sup>3</sup> Institut für Informatik, Technische Universität München, Germany  
seidl@in.tum.de

**Abstract.** Top-down tree transducers are a convenient formalism for describing tree transformations. They can be equipped with regular look-ahead, which allows them to inspect a subtree before processing it. In certain cases, such a look-ahead can be avoided and the transformation can be realized by a transducer without look-ahead. Removing the look-ahead from a transducer, if possible, is technically highly challenging. For a restricted class of transducers with look-ahead, namely those that are total, deterministic, ultralinear, and bounded erasing, we present an algorithm that, for a given transducer from that class, (1) decides whether it is equivalent to a total deterministic transducer without look-ahead, and (2) constructs such a transducer if the answer is positive. For the whole class of total deterministic transducers with look-ahead we present a similar algorithm, which assumes that a so-called difference bound is known for the given transducer. The designer of a transducer can usually also determine a difference bound for it.

## 1 Introduction

Many simple tree transformations can be modeled by top-down tree transducers [22,23]. They are recently used in XML database theory (e.g., [8,14,16,19,20,21]), in computational linguistics (e.g., [15,17,18]) and in picture generation [4]. A *top-down tree transducer* is a finite-state device that scans the input tree in a (parallel) top-down fashion, simultaneously producing the output tree in a (parallel) top-down fashion. A more powerful and more convenient model for specifying tree translations is the top-down tree transducer *with regular look-ahead* [6]. It consists of a top-down tree transducer and a finite-state tree automaton, called the look-ahead automaton. We may think of its execution in two phases: In a first phase the input tree is relabeled by attaching to each input node the active state of the automaton, called the look-ahead state at that node. In the second phase the top-down tree transducer is executed over the relabeled tree, thus possibly making use of the look-ahead information in the new input labels. As an example, consider a transducer  $M_{\text{ex}}$  of which the look-ahead automaton checks whether the input tree contains a leaf labeled  $a$ . If so, then  $M_{\text{ex}}$  outputs  $a$ , and otherwise it outputs a copy of the input tree. It should be clear that there is no top-down tree transducer (without look-ahead) that realizes the same translation as  $M_{\text{ex}}$ . The intuitive reason is

that in general the complete input tree must be read and buffered in memory, before the appropriate choice of output can be made. How can we formally prove that indeed no top-down tree transducer (without look-ahead) can realize this translation? In general, is there a method to determine for a given top-down tree transducer *with look-ahead*, whether or not its translation can be realized by a top-down tree transducer *without look-ahead*? And if the answer is yes, can such a transducer be constructed from the given one?

In this paper we give two partial answers to these questions, where we restrict ourselves to total deterministic transducers (which will not be mentioned any more in what follows). For such transducers we provide a general method as discussed above. However, part of the method is not automatic, but depends on additional knowledge about the given transducer with look-ahead (which can usually be determined by the designer of the transducer). For a restricted type of transducers (where the restrictions concern the capability of the transducer to copy and erase) that knowledge can also be obtained automatically, which means that for a thus restricted transducer with look-ahead it is decidable whether its translation can be realized by a (nonrestricted) transducer without look-ahead, and if so, such a transducer can be constructed from the given transducer.

The main notion on which our method is based is that of a *difference tree* of a top-down tree transducer with regular look-ahead. Consider two trees obtained from one input tree by replacing one of its leaves by two different look-ahead states of the transducer  $M$ . Compare now the two output trees of  $M$  on these input trees, where  $M$  treats the look-ahead state as representing an input subtree for which the look-ahead automaton of  $M$  arrives in that state at the root of the subtree. By removing the largest common prefix of these two output trees (i.e., every node of which every ancestor has the same label in each of the two trees), we obtain a finite set of output subtrees that we call difference trees of  $M$ . Intuitively, the largest common prefix is the part of the output that does not depend on the look-ahead state, whereas a difference tree is a part of the output that can be produced because  $M$  knows the look-ahead state of the subtree. Thus, the set  $\text{diff}(M)$  of all difference trees of  $M$  can be viewed as a measure of the impact of the look-ahead on the behaviour of  $M$ . For the example transducer  $M_{\text{ex}}$  above,  $\text{diff}(M_{\text{ex}})$  consists of the one-node tree  $a$  and all trees of which all leaves are labeled  $b$  (with one special leaf); thus,  $\text{diff}(M_{\text{ex}})$  is infinite.

Now the idea of our method is as follows, where we use *dtla* and *dtop* to abbreviate top-down tree transducer with and without look-ahead, respectively. In [8] it was shown that for every dtop an equivalent canonical earliest dtop can be constructed. Earliest means that each output node is produced as early as possible by the transducer, and canonical means that different states of the transducer are inequivalent. We prove that also for every dtla an equivalent canonical earliest dtla (with the same look-ahead automaton) can be constructed, where the earliest and canonical properties are relativized with respect to each look-ahead state. Thus, to devise our method we may restrict attention to canonical earliest transducers. Assume there exists a (canonical earliest) dtop  $N$  equivalent to the (canonical earliest) dtla  $M$ . Then the dtla  $M$  is at least as early as  $N$ . In other words, at each moment of the translation,  $M$  may be ahead of  $N$  but not vice versa, i.e., the output of  $N$  is a prefix of that of  $M$ , which is because  $M$  has additional information through its look-ahead. The output of  $N$  is the part of  $M$ 's output that does

not depend on the look-ahead state. Thus, when removing the output of  $N$  from that of  $M$ , the remaining trees are difference trees of  $M$ . Since  $N$  must be able to simulate  $M$ , it has to store these difference trees in its states. Hence,  $\text{diff}(M)$  must be finite. Moreover, it turns out that the above description of  $N$ 's behaviour completely determines  $N$ , and so  $N$  can be constructed from  $M$  and  $\text{diff}(M)$ , if it exists. Note that since  $\text{diff}(M_{\text{ex}})$  is infinite, the translation of  $M_{\text{ex}}$  cannot be realized by a dtop.

A natural number  $h$  is a *difference bound* for a dtla  $M$  if the following holds: if  $M$  has finitely many difference trees, then  $h$  is an upper bound on their height; in other words, if a tree in  $\text{diff}(M)$  has height  $> h$ , then  $\text{diff}(M)$  is infinite. Our first main result is that it is decidable for a given dtla  $M$  for which a difference bound is also given, whether  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop  $N$ , and if so, such a dtop  $N$  can be constructed. We do not know whether a difference bound can be computed for every dtla  $M$ , but the designer of  $M$  will usually be able to determine  $\text{diff}(M)$  and hence a difference bound for  $M$ . Our second main result is that a difference bound can be computed for dtlas that are ultralinear and bounded erasing. Ultralinearity means that the transducer cannot copy an input subtree when it is in a cycle (i.e., in a computation that starts and ends in the same state). Thus it is weaker than the linear property (which forbids copying) but stronger than the finite-copying property [9,7]. The latter implies that the size of the output tree of an ultralinear dtla is linear in the size of its input tree. Bounded erasing means that the transducer has no cycle in which no output is produced. The proof that a difference bound can be computed for ultralinear and bounded erasing dtlas, is based on pumping arguments that are technically involved.

The paper is structured as follows. Section 2 contains basic terminology, in particular concerning prefixes of trees. Nodes of trees are represented by Dewey notation. Section 3 defines the dtla (deterministic top-down tree transducer with regular look-ahead) and discusses some of its basic properties. It also explains the treatment of look-ahead states that occur in the input tree. In Section 4 we define the notions of difference tree and difference bound, illustrated by some examples. In Section 5 we discuss some normal forms for dtlas, in particular *look-ahead uniformity* which is technically convenient. We prove that for every dtla  $M$  there is an equivalent canonical earliest dtla  $M'$  (which is also look-ahead uniform), and we show how to compute a difference bound for  $M'$  from one of  $M$ . Our first main result is proved in Section 6 (Theorem 26), refined in Section 6.1 and illustrated in Section 6.2. Section 6 starts with the definition of a *difference tuple* of a dtla  $M$ , which generalizes the notion of difference tree by considering all look-ahead states of  $M$  rather than just two. If  $N$  is a dtop equivalent to  $M$ , then its states are in one-to-one correspondence with the difference tuples of  $M$  (assuming that both  $N$  and  $M$  are canonical earliest), see Lemma 22. Sections 7–9 are devoted to the proof of our second main result (Theorem 66). Section 7 continues Section 3 by discussing some basic properties of dtlas: the *links* that exist between an input tree and its corresponding output tree, and for each node of the output tree, its *origin* in the input tree. In Section 8 the problem of computing a difference bound for a dtla  $M$  is reduced to that of computing two related upper bounds: an *output bound* for  $M$  and an *ancestral bound* for  $M$ . An output bound can be computed for every dtla. Finally, in Section 9, an ancestral bound is computed for every ultralinear and bounded erasing dtla. The computed output bound (in the previous section) and ancestral bound for a dtla  $M$  are both

based on pumping arguments (simple for the output bound, complicated for the ancestral bound). In both cases a part of the input tree on which  $M$  has a cyclic computation, is pumped in such a way that the corresponding output tree contains arbitrarily large difference trees. In the ancestral case the pumping argument is technically based on the fact that  $M$  cannot copy and must produce output during its cyclic computations. Since the pumping of trees makes it hard to address nodes by Dewey notation, a *dependency graph* is defined for  $M$  such that a cyclic computation of  $M$  corresponds to a cycle in its dependency graph; pumping the input tree then corresponds to repeating a cycle in the graph. At the end of Section 9 we consider two other classes of total dtlas for which equivalence to a dtop is decidable (and if so, such a dtop can be constructed): *output-monadic* dtlas and *depth-uniform* dtlas. Output-monadic means that every node of an output tree has at most one child. Depth-uniform means, in its simplest form, that all states in the right-hand sides of the rules of the dtla are at the same depth.

**Related Work.** For deterministic string transducers with regular look-ahead, look-ahead removal is decidable, i.e., it is decidable whether a given transducer with look-ahead is equivalent to a transducer without look-ahead, and if so, such a transducer can be constructed. This was proved in [3] (see also [2, Theorem IV.6.1]), for so-called subsequential functions. We extend that result (for the total case) by proving that look-ahead removal is decidable for output-monadic dtlas.

Look-ahead has been investigated for other types of tree transducers. For macro tree transducers [10,7] and streaming tree transducers [1], regular look-ahead can always be removed. The same is true for nondeterministic visibly pushdown transducers [12]. For deterministic visibly pushdown transducers the addition of regular look-ahead increases their power, but the decidability of look-ahead removal for these transducers is not studied in [12].

In [13] the multi bottom-up tree transducer (dmbot) was introduced and shown to have (effectively) the same expressive power as the dtla. Thus, our results can also be viewed as partial answers to the question whether it is decidable for a given dmbot to be equivalent to a dtop.

## 2 Preliminaries

The set of natural numbers is  $\mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ , and  $\mathbb{N}_+ = \{1, 2, \dots\}$ . For  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  we define  $[k] = \{1, \dots, k\}$ ; in particular,  $[0] = \emptyset$ . The domain of a partial function  $f$  is denoted  $\text{dom}(f)$ . For a set  $A$ , we denote by  $A^*$  the set of sequences, or strings, of elements of  $A$ . A string  $(a_1, \dots, a_n) \in A^*$  will be denoted  $a_1 \cdots a_n$ , unless there is a danger of confusion. The concatenation of two strings  $u$  and  $v$  is denoted  $u \cdot v$  or just  $uv$ , and the empty string is denoted  $\varepsilon$ . A string  $u$  is a prefix (postfix) of a string  $v$  if there exists a string  $w$  such that  $v = uw$  ( $v = wu$ ); it is a proper prefix (postfix) if  $w \neq \varepsilon$ . The length of a string  $u$  is denoted  $|u|$ . The cardinality of a set  $A$  is denoted  $|A|$ .

We assume the reader to be familiar with top-down tree transducers, which work on ranked trees. This means that the number of children of a node of a tree is determined by the symbol at that node. A ranked alphabet  $\Sigma$  is a finite set of symbols such that each symbol  $a \in \Sigma$  is implicitly equipped with a rank  $\text{rk}(a) \in \mathbb{N}$ . For  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  we define  $\Sigma^{(k)} = \{a \in \Sigma \mid \text{rk}(a) = k\}$ . To avoid trivialities, we assume that  $\Sigma^{(0)} \neq \emptyset$ . To indicate that  $\sigma \in \Sigma$  has rank  $k$ , we also write it as  $\sigma^{(k)}$ . The set  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  of (finite, ordered, ranked) trees over the ranked alphabet  $\Sigma$  is the smallest set (of terms) such that  $a(t_1, \dots, t_k) \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  if  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ , and  $t_1, \dots, t_k \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ . If  $a \in \Sigma^{(0)}$ , then we also write  $a$  for the tree  $a()$ ; if  $a \in \Sigma^{(1)}$  and  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , then we also write  $at$  for  $a(t)$ . We represent the nodes of a tree in Dewey notation, i.e., by strings of positive natural numbers. The empty string  $\varepsilon$  represents the root node and, for  $i \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,  $vi$  represents the  $i$ th child of the node  $v$  (and  $v$  is the parent of  $vi$ ). Every node  $v$  of a tree  $t$  has a label in  $\Sigma$ , denoted  $\text{lab}(t, v)$ . Formally, the set  $V(t) \subseteq \mathbb{N}_+^*$  of nodes (together with their labels) of the tree  $t$  is inductively defined as:  $V(t) = \{\varepsilon\} \cup \{iv \mid i \in [k], v \in V(t_i)\}$  if  $t = a(t_1, \dots, t_k)$ ,  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ , and  $t_1, \dots, t_k \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ ; moreover,  $\text{lab}(t, \varepsilon) = a$  and  $\text{lab}(t, iv) = \text{lab}(t_i, v)$ . A node  $u$  is an ancestor of node  $v$  (and  $v$  is a descendant of  $u$ ) if  $u$  is a prefix of  $v$ ; it is a proper ancestor/descendant if it is a proper prefix. For  $\Delta \subseteq \Sigma$ , we define  $V_\Delta(t) = \{v \in V(t) \mid \text{lab}(t, v) \in \Delta\}$ ; for  $a \in \Sigma$ , we write  $V_a(t)$  instead of  $V_{\{a\}}(t)$ . The subtree of  $t$  rooted at  $v \in V(t)$  is denoted by  $t/v$ ; formally,  $t/\varepsilon = t$  and if  $t = a(t_1, \dots, t_k)$  then  $t/iv = t_i/v$ . The size of  $t$ , denoted  $\text{size}(t)$ , is its number  $|V(t)|$  of nodes. The height of  $t$ , denoted  $\text{ht}(t)$ , is the maximal length of its nodes, i.e.,  $\max\{|v| \mid v \in V(t)\}$ . As an example, if  $t = \sigma(\sigma(a, b), \tau(b))$ , then  $V(t) = \{\varepsilon, 1, (1, 1), (1, 2), 2, (2, 1)\}$ ,  $\text{lab}(t, (1, 2)) = b$ ,  $V_b(t) = \{(1, 2), (2, 1)\}$ ,  $t/1 = \sigma(a, b)$ ,  $\text{size}(t) = 6$  and  $\text{ht}(t) = 2$ .

For a set of trees  $\mathcal{T}$ , we define  $\Sigma(\mathcal{T})$  to be the set of trees  $a(t_1, \dots, t_k)$  such that  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$  and  $t_1, \dots, t_k \in \mathcal{T}$ , and we define  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma(\mathcal{T})$  to be the smallest set of trees  $\mathcal{T}'$  such that  $\mathcal{T} \cup \Sigma(\mathcal{T}') \subseteq \mathcal{T}'$ . Note that  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma(\emptyset) = \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ .

A  $\Sigma$ -pattern is an upper portion, or prefix, of a tree in  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ . Formally the set  $\mathcal{P}_\Sigma$  of  $\Sigma$ -patterns is defined to be the set of trees  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma(\{\perp\})$ , where  $\perp$  is a new symbol of rank zero that is not in  $\Sigma$ . If  $t_0$  is a pattern containing exactly  $k$  occurrences of  $\perp$ , and  $t_1, \dots, t_k$  is a sequence of  $k$  patterns, then the pattern  $t = t_0[t_1, \dots, t_k]$  is obtained from  $t_0$  by replacing the  $i$ th occurrence of  $\perp$  (in left-to-right order) by  $t_i$ . A  $\Sigma$ -context is a  $\Sigma$ -pattern that contains exactly one occurrence of  $\perp$ . The set of all  $\Sigma$ -contexts is denoted  $\mathcal{C}_\Sigma$ . Thus, for  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , the tree  $C[t] \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  is obtained from the context  $C$  by replacing the unique occurrence of  $\perp$  in  $C$  by  $t$ .

On the set  $\mathcal{P}_\Sigma$  we define a partial order  $\sqsubseteq$  as follows: for patterns  $t$  and  $t'$  in  $\mathcal{P}_\Sigma$ ,  $t'$  is a *prefix* of  $t$ , denoted  $t' \sqsubseteq t$ , if  $t = t'[t_1, \dots, t_k]$  for suitable patterns  $t_1, \dots, t_k$ ; equivalently,  $V_a(t') \subseteq V_a(t)$  for every  $a \in \Sigma$ .<sup>4</sup> Note that  $\perp \sqsubseteq t$  for every pattern  $t$ . Every nonempty set  $\Pi$  of  $\Sigma$ -patterns has a greatest lower bound  $\sqcap \Pi$  in  $\mathcal{P}_\Sigma$ , called the *largest common prefix* of the patterns in  $\Pi$ ; it is the unique pattern  $t'$  such that for every  $v \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  and  $a \in \Sigma$ ,  $v \in V_a(t')$  if and only if (1)  $v \in V_a(t)$  for every  $t \in \Pi$  and (2) every proper ancestor of  $v$  is in  $V(t')$ . This implies the following easy lemma.

**Lemma 1.** *Let  $\Pi$  be a nonempty subset of  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , and let  $v \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$ . Then,  $v \in V_\perp(\sqcap \Pi)$  if and only if*

- (1)  $v \in V(t)$  for every  $t \in \Pi$ ,
- (2)  $\text{lab}(t_1, \hat{v}) = \text{lab}(t_2, \hat{v})$  for every proper ancestor  $\hat{v}$  of  $v$  and all  $t_1, t_2 \in \Pi$ , and
- (3) there exist  $t_1, t_2 \in \Pi$  such that  $\text{lab}(t_1, v) \neq \text{lab}(t_2, v)$ .

For instance,  $\sqcap\{\sigma(\tau(a), b), \sigma(b, b)\} = \sigma(\tau(a), b) \sqcap \sigma(b, b) = \sigma(\perp, b)$ .

For  $t, t' \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  and  $v \in V(t)$ , we denote by  $t[v \leftarrow t']$  the tree that is obtained from  $t$  by replacing its subtree  $t/v$  by  $t'$ . More precisely, if  $C$  is the unique context in  $\mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  such that  $C \sqsubseteq t$  and  $C/v = \perp$ , then  $t[v \leftarrow t'] = C[t']$ .

Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a subset of  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  such that no  $s \in \mathcal{S}$  is a subtree of  $s' \in \mathcal{S}$  with  $s \neq s'$ . For a tree  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  and a partial function  $\psi : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , we define  $t[s \leftarrow \psi(s) \mid s \in \mathcal{S}]$  to be the result of replacing every subtree  $s$  of  $t$  by  $\psi(s)$ , for every  $s \in \mathcal{S}$ . More precisely,  $t[s \leftarrow \psi(s) \mid s \in \mathcal{S}] = t[v_1 \leftarrow \psi(t/v_1)] \cdots [v_k \leftarrow \psi(t/v_k)]$  where  $\{v_1, \dots, v_k\} = \{v \in V(t) \mid t/v \in \mathcal{S}\}$ . Note that  $v_i$  is not an ancestor of  $v_j$ , for  $i \neq j$ , and hence the order of the substitutions  $[v_i \leftarrow \psi(t/v_i)]$  is irrelevant. Note also that  $t[s \leftarrow \psi(s) \mid s \in \mathcal{S}]$  is defined if and only if  $\psi(t/v_i)$  is defined for every  $i \in [k]$ .

To formulate the rules of top-down tree transducers, we use variables  $x_i$ , with  $i \in \mathbb{N}$ , which are assumed to have rank 0. The set  $\{x_0, x_1, x_2, \dots\}$  of all such variables is denoted  $X$ . For  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , we denote  $\{x_1, \dots, x_k\}$  by  $X_k$ ; note that  $X_0 = \emptyset$ .

<sup>4</sup> In [8] the inverse of the partial order  $\sqsubseteq$  is used.

### 3 Deterministic Top-Down Tree Transducers

A *deterministic top-down tree transducer with regular look-ahead* (dtla for short) is a tuple  $M = (Q, \Sigma, \Delta, R, A, P, \delta)$  where  $Q$  is a finite set of states of rank 1,  $\Sigma$  and  $\Delta$  are the ranked input and output alphabets, respectively, and  $P$  is a finite nonempty set of look-ahead states. The function  $A$  maps look-ahead states to trees in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q(\{x_0\}))$ ; for  $p \in P$ , the tree  $A(p)$  is called the  $p$ -axiom of  $M$ . The finite set  $R$  provides at most one rule

$$q(a(x_1:p_1, \dots, x_k:p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$$

for every state  $q$ , every input symbol  $a$  of rank  $k \geq 0$  and every sequence  $p_1, \dots, p_k$  of look-ahead states. The right-hand side  $\zeta$  of the rule is a tree in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q(X_k))$ , i.e.,  $\zeta = t[q_1(x_{i_1}), \dots, q_r(x_{i_r})]$  for some pattern  $t \in \mathcal{P}_\Delta$ ,  $r = |V_\perp(t)|$ ,  $q_j \in Q$ , and  $x_{i_j} \in \{x_1, \dots, x_k\}$  for  $j \in [r]$ ; we denote  $\zeta$  also by  $\text{rhs}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$ . Finally,  $\delta$  is the transition function of the (total deterministic bottom-up) look-ahead automaton  $(P, \delta)$ . That means that  $\delta(a, p_1, \dots, p_k) \in P$  for every  $k \geq 0$ ,  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ , and  $p_1, \dots, p_k \in P$ .

Examples of dtlas are given in the next section. Whenever we consider a dtla with the name  $M$ , it will be understood that its components are named  $(Q, \Sigma, \Delta, R, A, P, \delta)$ . When necessary we provide the components of a dtla  $M$  with the subscript  $M$ . Then we have  $Q_M, \Sigma_M, \Delta_M, R_M, \text{rhs}_M$ , etc. We denote by  $\text{maxrhs}(M)$  the maximal height of the axioms and the right-hand sides of the rules of  $M$ .

We now define the semantics of the dtla  $M$ , starting with the semantics of its look-ahead automaton  $(P, \delta)$ . The transition function  $\delta$  gives rise to a function  $\delta^*$  that maps  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  to  $P$ . It is defined by  $\delta^*(a(s_1, \dots, s_k)) = \delta(a, \delta^*(s_1), \dots, \delta^*(s_k))$  for  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$  and  $s_1, \dots, s_k \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ . For convenience, we denote the function  $\delta^*$  as well with  $\delta$ . For  $p \in P$  we denote by  $\llbracket p \rrbracket_M$  the set of trees  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  that have look-ahead state  $p$ , i.e.,  $\delta(s) = p$ ; we drop the subscript  $M$  from  $\llbracket p \rrbracket_M$  whenever it is clear from the context. Note that  $\{\llbracket p \rrbracket \mid p \in P\}$  is a partition of  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ . For a node  $u$  of an input tree  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , we also say that  $\delta(s/u)$  is the look-ahead state at  $u$ .

For  $q \in Q$ ,  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , and  $u \in V(s)$  we define  $\text{rhs}(q, s, u) = \text{rhs}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$  where  $\text{lab}(s, u) = a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$  and  $p_i = \delta(s/ui)$  for every  $i \in [k]$ . Intuitively,  $\text{rhs}(q, s, u)$  is the right-hand side of the rule that is applied when  $M$  arrives at node  $u$  in state  $q$  (if that rule exists); it is uniquely determined by the label of  $u$  and the look-ahead states at its children.

A *sentential form* of  $M$  for  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  is a tree in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q(V(s)))$ , where the nodes in  $V(s)$  are viewed as symbols of rank 0. For sentential forms  $\xi, \xi'$  we write  $\xi \Rightarrow_s \xi'$  if there exist  $v \in V(\xi)$ ,  $q \in Q$ , and  $u \in V(s)$  such that

$$\xi/v = q(u) \text{ and } \xi' = \xi[v \leftarrow \text{rhs}(q, s, u)[x_i \leftarrow ui \mid i \in \mathbb{N}_+]].$$

This will be called a computation step of  $M$  in state  $q$  at nodes  $u$  and  $v$ . It is easy to see that the rewriting in computations is confluent.<sup>5</sup> Hence, if  $\xi \Rightarrow_s^* t \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta$  and  $\xi \Rightarrow_s^* \xi'$ , then  $\xi' \Rightarrow_s^* t$ ; thus, computations that start with a given sentential form lead to a unique tree in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta$  (if it exists).

<sup>5</sup> Confluence means that if  $\xi \Rightarrow_s^* \xi_1$  and  $\xi \Rightarrow_s^* \xi_2$ , then there exists a sentential form  $\bar{\xi}$  such that  $\xi_1 \Rightarrow_s^* \bar{\xi}$  and  $\xi_2 \Rightarrow_s^* \bar{\xi}$ .

The dtla  $M$  realizes a partial function  $\llbracket M \rrbracket : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_\Delta$ , called its *translation*. Let  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  and  $\delta(s) = p \in P$ . The output tree  $\llbracket M \rrbracket(s)$  of the transducer  $M$  for the input tree  $s$  is the unique tree  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta$  such that  $A(p)[x_0 \leftarrow \varepsilon] \Rightarrow_s^* t$  (if it exists). For readability, we will write  $M(s)$  instead of  $\llbracket M \rrbracket(s)$ .

Two dtlas  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  are *equivalent* if they realize the same translation, i.e., if  $\Sigma_{M_1} = \Sigma_{M_2}$ ,  $\Delta_{M_1} = \Delta_{M_2}$  and  $\llbracket M_1 \rrbracket = \llbracket M_2 \rrbracket$ .

Intuitively, a sentential form  $\xi$  consists of output that has already been produced by  $M$ ; moreover,  $\xi/v = q(u)$  means that  $M$  has arrived at node  $u$  of the input tree  $s$  in state  $q$  and, starting in that state, will translate the input subtree  $s/u$  into the output subtree  $M(s)/v$ . Note that several parallel copies of  $M$  can arrive at  $u$  for different nodes of  $\xi$ , i.e., there may exist nodes  $v' \neq v$  such that  $\xi/v' = q'(u)$ , where  $q'$  may also be equal to  $q$ .

A sentential form  $\xi$  for  $s$  is *reachable* if  $A(p)[x_0 \leftarrow \varepsilon] \Rightarrow_s^* \xi$  where  $p = \delta(s)$ . Thus, if  $M(s)$  is defined and  $\xi$  is a reachable sentential form for  $s$ , then  $\xi \Rightarrow_s^* M(s)$ .

We also define the semantics of every state  $q$  of  $M$  as a partial function  $\llbracket q \rrbracket_M : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_\Delta$  as follows. For  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ ,  $\llbracket q \rrbracket_M(s)$  is the unique tree  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta$  such that  $q(\varepsilon) \Rightarrow_s^* t$  (if it exists). For readability, we will write  $q_M(s)$  instead of  $\llbracket q \rrbracket_M(s)$ .

The following lemma is easy to prove.

**Lemma 2.** *Let  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  and  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta$ .*

(1) *For every  $q \in Q$  and  $u \in V(s)$ ,*

$$q(u) \Rightarrow_s^* t \text{ if and only if } q_M(s/u) = t.$$

(2) *For every sentential form  $\xi$  for  $s$ ,*

$$\xi \Rightarrow_s^* t \text{ if and only if } t = \xi[q(u) \leftarrow q_M(s/u) \mid q \in Q, u \in V(s)].$$

(3) *If  $\delta(s) = p$ , then*

$$M(s) = A(p)[q(x_0) \leftarrow q_M(s) \mid q \in Q].$$

(4) *For every  $\bar{q} \in Q$ , if  $s = a(s_1, \dots, s_k)$ , then*

$$\bar{q}_M(s) = \text{rhs}(\bar{q}, a, \delta(s_1), \dots, \delta(s_k))[q(x_i) \leftarrow q_M(s_i) \mid q \in Q, i \in [k]].$$

*Proof.* (1) follows from the obvious bijection between the nodes of  $s/u$  and the nodes of  $s$  with prefix  $u$  (i.e., the descendants of  $u$  in  $s$ ); (2) is obvious from (1) and the fact that the computation steps  $\xi \Rightarrow_s \xi'$  of  $M$  are context-free<sup>6</sup>; (3) and (4) follow from (2), taking  $\xi = A(p)[x_0 \leftarrow \varepsilon]$  and  $\xi = \text{rhs}(\bar{q}, s, \varepsilon)[x_i \leftarrow i \mid i \in [k]]$ , respectively.  $\square$

Note that (3) and (4) of Lemma 2 form an alternative way of defining the semantics of  $M$  (recursively).

**Convention.** For a given dtla  $M$  it can (and will, from now on) be assumed that all its states and look-ahead states are *reachable* in the following sense. A look-ahead state

<sup>6</sup> In fact, the computations of  $M$  on  $s$  can be viewed as derivations of a context-free grammar with set of nonterminals  $Q(V(s))$  and rules  $q(u) \rightarrow \text{rhs}(q, s, u)[x_i \leftarrow ui \mid i \in \mathbb{N}_+]$ .



$p$  is reachable if  $\llbracket p \rrbracket_M \neq \emptyset$ . A state  $q$  is reachable if  $q$  occurs in an axiom, or if  $q$  occurs in the right-hand side of a rule of which the left-hand side starts with a reachable state.

A *deterministic top-down tree transducer* (dtop for short) is a dtla  $M$  with trivial look-ahead automaton  $(P, \delta)$ , i.e.,  $P$  is a singleton. Whenever convenient, we drop  $(P, \delta)$  from the tuple defining  $M$ , we identify  $A$  with the unique axiom  $A(p)$ , we write a rule as  $q(a(x_1, \dots, x_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  rather than  $q(a(x_1:p, \dots, x_k:p)) \rightarrow \zeta$  (where  $p$  is the unique look-ahead state of  $M$ ) and we denote  $\zeta$  by  $\text{rhs}(q, a)$ .

A dtla  $M$  is *proper* (a dtpla for short) if it is not a dtop, i.e., if  $|P| \geq 2$ . Obviously, to decide whether  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop, we may assume that  $M$  is proper.

A dtla  $M$  is *total* if  $\text{dom}(\llbracket M \rrbracket) = \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , i.e., if its translation  $\llbracket M \rrbracket$  is a total function. Note that it is decidable whether  $M$  is total, because  $\text{dom}(\llbracket M \rrbracket)$  is effectively a regular tree language (cf. [6, Corollary 2.7]). From now on we only consider total dtlas.

A dtla  $M$  is *complete* if  $\text{rhs}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$  is defined for every  $q \in Q$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ , and  $p_1, \dots, p_k \in P$ . By Lemma 2(4), this means that  $q_M(s)$  is defined for every  $q \in Q$  and  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ . Thus, by Lemma 2(3), if  $M$  is complete, then  $M$  is total.

A dtla  $M$  is *linear* if for every rule  $q(a(x_1:p_1, \dots, x_k:p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$ , each variable  $x_i$  occurs at most once in  $\zeta$ .

A dtla  $M$  is *ultralinear* if there is a mapping  $\mu : Q \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that for every rule  $q(a(x_1:p_1, \dots, x_k:p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  the following two properties hold for every  $\bar{q}(x_i)$  that occurs in  $\zeta$ : (1)  $\mu(\bar{q}) \geq \mu(q)$ , and (2) if  $\mu(\bar{q}) = \mu(q)$ , then  $x_i$  occurs exactly once in  $\zeta$ . Obviously, every linear dtla is ultralinear.

A dtla  $M$  is *nonerasing* if it does not have erasing rules. A rule of  $M$  is an *erasing rule* if its right-hand side is in  $Q(X)$ , i.e., contains no symbols from  $\Delta$ .

A dtla  $M$  is *bounded erasing* (for short, *b-erasing*) if there is no cycle in the directed graph  $E_M$  with the set of nodes  $Q$  and an edge from  $q$  to  $q'$  if there is an erasing rule of the form  $q(a(x_1:p_1, \dots, x_k:p_k)) \rightarrow q'(x_j)$ . Obviously, every nonerasing dtla is b-erasing.

**Look-ahead states in input trees.** Let  $M = (Q, \Sigma, \Delta, R, A, P, \delta)$  be a total dtla. To analyze the behaviour of  $M$  for different look-ahead states, we will consider input trees  $\bar{s}$  with occurrences of  $p \in P$ , viewed as input symbol of rank zero, representing an absent subtree  $s$  with  $\delta(s) = p$ . If  $M$  arrives in state  $q$  at a  $p$ -labeled leaf  $u$  of  $\bar{s}$ , then  $M$  will output the new symbol  $\langle q, p \rangle$  of rank zero, representing the absent output tree  $q_M(s)$ . In this way,  $M$  translates input trees  $\bar{s} \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(P)$  to output trees in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q \times P)$ .<sup>7</sup>

Formally, we extend  $M$  to a dtla  $M^\circ = (Q, \Sigma^\circ, \Delta^\circ, R^\circ, A, P, \delta^\circ)$  where  $\Sigma^\circ = \Sigma \cup P$  such that every element of  $P$  has rank zero,  $\Delta^\circ = \Delta \cup (Q \times P)$  such that every element of  $Q \times P$  has rank zero,  $R^\circ$  is obtained from  $R$  by adding the rules  $q(p) \rightarrow \langle q, p \rangle$  for all  $q \in Q$  and  $p \in P$  such that  $q_M(s)$  is defined for some  $s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket_M$ , and  $\delta^\circ$  is the extension of  $\delta$  such that  $\delta^\circ(p) = p$  for every  $p \in P$ .

For notational simplicity, we will denote  $\delta^\circ(\bar{s})$ ,  $M^\circ(\bar{s})$  and  $q_{M^\circ}(\bar{s})$  by  $\delta(\bar{s})$ ,  $M(\bar{s})$  and  $q_M(\bar{s})$ , respectively, for every input tree  $\bar{s} \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(P)$ . But note that we do *not* drop  $^\circ$  from  $\llbracket p \rrbracket_{M^\circ}$ ,  $\llbracket M^\circ \rrbracket$ , and  $\llbracket q \rrbracket_{M^\circ}$ , i.e.,  $\llbracket p \rrbracket_M$ ,  $\llbracket M \rrbracket$ , and  $\llbracket q \rrbracket_M$  keep their meaning.

We will use the following elementary lemma, which expresses the above intuition.

<sup>7</sup> Without loss of generality we assume that  $P$  and  $\Sigma$  are disjoint, and so are  $Q \times P$  and  $\Delta$ .

**Lemma 3.** *Let  $M$  be a total dtla. Let  $\bar{s}$  be a tree in  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma(P)$ , and for every  $p \in P$ , let  $s_p$  be a tree in  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma(P)$  such that  $\delta(s_p) = p$ . Then  $\delta(\bar{s}[p \leftarrow s_p \mid p \in P]) = \delta(\bar{s})$  and*

$$M(\bar{s}[p \leftarrow s_p \mid p \in P]) = M(\bar{s})[\langle q, p \rangle \leftarrow q_M(s_p) \mid q \in Q, p \in P]. \quad (1)$$

*Proof.* Let  $s' = \bar{s}[p \leftarrow s_p \mid p \in P]$ . It should be clear that  $\delta(s'/v) = \delta(\bar{s}/v)$  for every node  $v$  of  $\bar{s}$ . Let  $p' = \delta(s') = \delta(\bar{s})$ .

We first assume that  $s_p \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  for every  $p \in P$ . Thus  $s' \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , and so  $M(s')$  is defined. Let  $U$  be the set of nodes  $u$  of  $\bar{s}$  such that  $\text{lab}(\bar{s}, u) \in P$ , and for  $u \in U$ , let  $p_u = \text{lab}(\bar{s}, u)$ . Now consider a computation  $A(p')[x_0 \leftarrow \varepsilon] \Rightarrow_{s'}^* \xi$  of  $M$  such that  $\xi \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q(U))$  and none of the computation steps is at a node  $u \in U$  (and hence not at a descendant of  $u$ ). Then, by the observation above, also  $A(p')[x_0 \leftarrow \varepsilon] \Rightarrow_{\bar{s}}^* \xi$ . By Lemma 2(2),  $M(s') = \xi[q(u) \leftarrow q_M(s_{p_u}) \mid q \in Q, u \in U]$ . Thus,  $q_M(s_{p_u})$  is defined for every  $q(u)$  that occurs in  $\xi$ , and so  $q(p_u) \rightarrow \langle q, p_u \rangle$  is a rule of  $M^\circ$ . Hence  $\xi \Rightarrow_{\bar{s}}^* \xi[q(u) \leftarrow \langle q, p_u \rangle \mid q \in Q, u \in U]$  and so  $M(\bar{s}) = \xi[q(u) \leftarrow \langle q, p_u \rangle \mid q \in Q, u \in U]$ . This proves Equation (1) for the case where  $s_p \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ . It also implies that  $M^\circ$  is total, because for every  $\bar{s} \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(P)$  one can choose some  $s_p \in \llbracket p \rrbracket_M$  for each  $p \in P$ , and then  $M(\bar{s}[p \leftarrow s_p \mid p \in P])$  is defined and hence so is  $M(\bar{s})$ . Since  $M^\circ$  is total, the previous argument also proves Equation (1) for the general case where  $s_p \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(P)$ .  $\square$

Note that the proof of Lemma 3 shows that if  $M$  is total, then so is  $M^\circ$ . From Lemma 3 we immediately obtain the next lemma for  $\Sigma$ -contexts. Note that for every  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p \in P$ , the tree  $M(C[p])$  is in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q \times \{p\})$ .

**Lemma 4.** *Let  $M$  be a total dtla. Let  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$ ,  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(P)$ , and  $p \in P$  such that  $\delta(s) = p$ . Then  $\delta(C[s]) = \delta(C[p])$  and  $M(C[s]) = M(C[p])[\langle q, p \rangle \leftarrow q_M(s) \mid q \in Q]$ .*

*Proof.* Apply Lemma 3 with  $\bar{s} = C[p]$  and  $s_p = s$ .  $\square$

In Section 6 the next lemma will be needed.

**Lemma 5.** *Let  $M$  be a total dtop. Then  $M$  is complete, and for every  $q \in Q$  there exists  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  such that  $\langle q, p \rangle$  occurs in  $M(C[p])$ , where  $P = \{p\}$ .*

*Proof.* It is convenient to assume that  $p = \perp$  (and so  $C[p] = C$ ). We first prove the second statement. Since we assume, by convention, that every state  $q$  of  $M$  is reachable, we proceed by induction on the definition of reachability. If  $q(x_0)$  occurs in the axiom  $A$  of  $M$ , then  $C = \perp$  satisfies the requirement because  $M(\perp) = A[\bar{q}(x_0) \leftarrow \langle \bar{q}, \perp \rangle \mid \bar{q} \in Q]$ . Now let  $q(a(x_1, \dots, x_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  be a rule of  $M$  such that  $q$  is reachable, and let  $\zeta/z = q'(x_j)$ . By induction there exist  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $v \in V(M(C))$  such that  $M(C)/v = \langle q, \perp \rangle$ . Let  $s_j = \perp$  and choose  $s_m \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  for  $m \in [k] - \{j\}$ . Let  $C'$  be the  $\Sigma$ -context  $C[a(s_1, \dots, s_k)]$ . By Lemma 4,  $M(C') = M(C)[\langle \bar{q}, \perp \rangle \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(a(s_1, \dots, s_k)) \mid \bar{q} \in Q]$  and by Lemma 2(4),  $q_M(a(s_1, \dots, s_k)) = \zeta[\bar{q}(x_i) \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(s_i) \mid \bar{q} \in Q, i \in [k]]$ . Then  $M(C')/vz = q_M(a(s_1, \dots, s_k))/z = q'_M(s_j) = \langle q', \perp \rangle$ . So,  $\langle q', \perp \rangle$  occurs in  $M(C')$ .

To show that  $M$  is complete, let  $q \in Q$  and  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ . We have shown that there exist  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $v \in V(M(C))$  such that  $M(C)/v = \langle q, \perp \rangle$ . Let  $C'$  be as above. Then  $M(C')/v = q_M(a(s_1, \dots, s_k))$ . Hence  $\text{rhs}(q, a)$  is defined by Lemma 2(4).  $\square$

## 4 Difference Trees

Let  $M$  be a total dtla. We wish to decide whether  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop. Let  $C$  be a  $\Sigma$ -context and let  $p, p' \in P$ . As explained in the Introduction, we are interested in the difference between the output of  $M$  on input  $C[p]$  and its output on input  $C[p']$ , see also Lemma 4. Intuitively, a dtop  $N$  that is equivalent to  $M$  does not know whether the subtree  $s$  of an input tree  $C[s]$  has look-ahead state  $p$  or  $p'$ , and hence, when reading the context  $C$ , it can output at most the largest common prefix  $M(C[p]) \sqcap M(C[p'])$  of the output trees  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$ .<sup>8</sup> Let  $v$  be a node of  $M(C[p]) \sqcap M(C[p'])$  with label  $\perp$ . Then we say that  $M(C[p])/v$  is a *difference tree* of  $M$  (and hence, by symmetry, so is  $M(C[p'])/v$ ). Thus, a difference tree is a part of the output that can be produced by  $M$  because it knows that  $s$  has look-ahead state  $p$  (or  $p'$ ). Intuitively, to simulate  $M$ , the dtop  $N$  must store the difference trees in its state. Hence, for  $N$  to exist, there should be finitely many difference trees (as will be proved in Corollary 23). We denote the set of all difference trees of  $M$  by  $\text{diff}(M)$ , for varying  $C$ ,  $p$ ,  $p'$ , and  $v$ . Thus we define

$$\text{diff}(M) = \{M(C[p])/v \mid C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma, p \in P, \exists p' \in P : v \in V_\perp(M(C[p]) \sqcap M(C[p'])))\},$$

which is a subset of  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q \times P)$ . We define the number  $\text{maxdiff}(M) \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$  to be the maximal height of all difference trees of  $M$ , i.e.,

$$\text{maxdiff}(M) = \max\{\text{ht}(t) \mid t \in \text{diff}(M)\}.$$

Intuitively,  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$  gives a measure of how much the transducer  $M$  makes use of its look-ahead information. Obviously,  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$  is finite (i.e., in  $\mathbb{N}$ ) if and only if  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite. We will say that a number  $h(M) \in \mathbb{N}$  is a *difference bound* for  $M$  if the following holds: if  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite, then  $\text{maxdiff}(M) \leq h(M)$ . Our first main result (Theorem 26) is that if a difference bound for  $M$  is known, then we can decide whether  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop, and if so, construct such a dtop from  $M$ . Our second main result (Theorem 66) is that a difference bound can be computed for every total dtla  $M$  that is ultralinear and b-erasing.

A node  $v \in V_\perp(M(C[p]) \sqcap M(C[p'])))$  will be called a *difference node* of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$ . It is characterized in the next lemma, which follows immediately from Lemma 1.

**Lemma 6.** *Let  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$ ,  $p, p' \in P$ , and  $v \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$ . Then,  $v$  is a difference node of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$  if and only if*

- (1)  $v \in V(M(C[p])) \cap V(M(C[p'])))$ ,
- (2)  $\text{lab}(M(C[p]), \hat{v}) = \text{lab}(M(C[p']), \hat{v})$  for every proper ancestor  $\hat{v}$  of  $v$ , and
- (3)  $\text{lab}(M(C[p]), v) \neq \text{lab}(M(C[p']), v)$ .

<sup>8</sup> Recall that  $M(C[p])$  denotes  $M^\circ(C[p])$ , which is defined because  $M^\circ$  is total (as shown in the proof of Lemma 3).

Note that if  $v$  is a difference node of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$ , then  $p \neq p'$ . Thus, in the definition of  $\text{diff}(M)$  we can assume that  $p \neq p'$ . Hence, if  $M$  is a dtop then  $\text{diff}(M) = \emptyset$  and so  $\text{maxdiff}(M) = 0$ . Note also that, to compute  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$  for a dtla  $M$ , it suffices to consider difference trees of non-zero height, i.e., difference nodes  $v$  that are not leaves of  $M(C[p])$ .

We now give some examples of dtlas with their sets of difference trees.

*Example 7.* Let  $\Sigma = \Delta = \{\sigma^{(1)}, a^{(0)}, b^{(0)}\}$ , which means that  $\Sigma$  and  $\Delta$  are the ranked alphabet  $\{\sigma, a, b\}$  with  $\text{rk}(\sigma) = 1$  and  $\text{rk}(a) = \text{rk}(b) = 0$ . We consider the following total dtla  $M = (Q, \Sigma, \Delta, R, A, P, \delta)$  with  $M(\sigma^n a) = a$  and  $M(\sigma^n b) = \sigma^n b$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . It is, in fact, the dtla  $M_{\text{ex}}$  of the Introduction, for this particular input alphabet. Its set of look-ahead states is  $P = \{p_a, p_b\}$  with transition function  $\delta$  defined by  $\delta(a) = p_a$ ,  $\delta(b) = p_b$ ,  $\delta(\sigma, p_a) = p_a$ , and  $\delta(\sigma, p_b) = p_b$ . Its set of states is  $Q = \{q\}$ , its two axioms are  $A(p_a) = a$  and  $A(p_b) = q(x_0)$ , and its set  $R$  of rules contains the two rules  $q(\sigma(x_1 : p_b)) \rightarrow \sigma(q(x_1))$  and  $q(b) \rightarrow b$ .

Clearly,  $\mathcal{C}_\Sigma = \{\sigma^n \perp \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$  and for  $C = \sigma^n \perp$  we have  $M(C[p_a]) = a$  and  $M(C[p_b]) = \sigma^n \langle q, p_b \rangle$ . Since  $M(C[p_a]) \sqcap M(C[p_b]) = \perp$ , the only difference node of  $M(C[p_a])$  and  $M(C[p_b])$  is  $\varepsilon$ , and we obtain the difference trees  $M(C[p_a])$  and  $M(C[p_b])$ . Hence,  $\text{diff}(M) = \{a\} \cup \{\sigma^n \langle q, p_b \rangle \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$  and  $\text{maxdiff}(M) = \infty$ . Since  $\text{diff}(M)$  is infinite,  $M$  is not equivalent to a dtop, as will be shown in Corollary 23.  $\square$

*Example 8.* Let  $\Sigma = \Delta = \{\sigma^{(1)}, \tau^{(1)}, a^{(0)}, b^{(0)}\}$  and consider the following total dtla  $M$ . For an input tree  $s$  with leaf  $a$ ,  $M$  outputs the top-most 3 unary symbols of  $s$  and the leaf  $a$  if  $\text{size}(s) \geq 4$ , and it outputs  $s$  if  $\text{size}(s) \leq 3$ . For an input tree with leaf  $b$ ,  $M$  outputs  $b$ . The look-ahead automaton of  $M$  is similar to the one of the previous example:  $P = \{p_a, p_b\}$  with  $\delta(a) = p_a$ ,  $\delta(b) = p_b$ , and  $\delta(\gamma, p) = p$  for  $\gamma \in \{\sigma, \tau\}$  and  $p \in P$ . The set of states is  $Q = \{q_0, q_1, q_2\}$ . The axioms are  $A(p_a) = q_0(x_0)$  and  $A(p_b) = b$ . For  $q \in Q$ ,  $M$  has the rules  $q(a) \rightarrow a$ , and for  $\gamma \in \{\sigma, \tau\}$ , the rules  $q_0(\gamma(x_1 : p_a)) \rightarrow \gamma(q_1(x_1))$ ,  $q_1(\gamma(x_1 : p_a)) \rightarrow \gamma(q_2(x_1))$ , and  $q_2(\gamma(x_1 : p_a)) \rightarrow \gamma(a)$ .

As in the previous example,  $M(C[p_a]) \sqcap M(C[p_b]) = \perp$  for every  $\Sigma$ -context  $C$ , and so  $\text{diff}(M)$  consists of all trees  $M(C[p_a])$  and  $M(C[p_b])$ , i.e.,  $\text{diff}(M)$  is the finite set containing the trees  $b$  and  $\langle q_0, p_a \rangle$ , and all trees  $\gamma_1(\langle q_1, p_a \rangle)$ ,  $\gamma_1(\gamma_2(\langle q_1, p_a \rangle))$ , and  $\gamma_1(\gamma_2(\gamma_3(a)))$  for  $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \gamma_3 \in \{\sigma, \tau\}$ . Hence,  $\text{maxdiff}(M) = 3$ .

It is not difficult to see that there exists a dtop  $N$  equivalent to  $M$ . It stores in its state the top-most  $\leq 3$  unary symbols of the input tree  $s$ , and depending on the leaf label of  $s$ , it outputs these symbols and  $a$  or it outputs  $b$ .  $\square$

*Example 9.* Let  $\Sigma = \{\sigma^{(2)}, aa^{(0)}, ab^{(0)}, ba^{(0)}, bb^{(0)}\}$  where we view  $aa$ ,  $ab$ ,  $ba$ , and  $bb$  as symbols, and let  $\Delta = \{\sigma^{(3)}, \#^{(2)}, a^{(0)}, b^{(0)}\} \cup \Sigma^{(0)}$ . We consider the following total dtla  $M$  such that  $M(aa) = aa$ ,  $M(ab) = ab$ ,  $M(ba) = ba$ ,  $M(bb) = bb$ , and for every  $s_1, s_2 \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ ,  $M(\sigma(s_1, s_2)) = \sigma(M(s_1), M(s_2), \#(y, z))$  where  $y \in \{a, b\}$  is the first letter of the label of the left-most leaf of  $\sigma(s_1, s_2)$  and  $z \in \{a, b\}$  is the second letter of the label of its right-most leaf. Its look-ahead automaton has four states  $p_{yz}$  with  $y, z \in \{a, b\}$ , such that  $\delta(yz) = p_{yz}$  and  $\delta(\sigma, p_{wx}, p_{yz}) = p_{wz}$  for all  $w, x, y, z \in \{a, b\}$ . It has one state  $q$ , its axioms are  $A(p_{yz}) = q(x_0)$ , and its rules are  $q(yz) \rightarrow yz$  and

$$q(\sigma(x_1 : p_{wx}, x_2 : p_{yz})) \rightarrow \sigma(q(x_1), q(x_2), \#(w, z))$$

for all  $w, x, y, z \in \{a, b\}$ .

Consider a  $\Sigma$ -context  $C$  and the trees  $M(C[p_{aa}])$  and  $M(C[p_{ba}])$ . Let  $u$  be the node of  $C$  with  $C/u = \perp$ . It is easy to see that the difference nodes of  $M(C[p_{aa}])$  and  $M(C[p_{ba}])$  are the node  $u$  and all nodes  $v \cdot (3, 1)$  such that  $v \neq u$  is a node of  $C$  and  $u$  is the left-most leaf of  $C/v$ . That gives the difference trees  $M(C[p_{aa}])/u = \langle q, p_{aa} \rangle$ ,  $M(C[p_{ba}])/u = \langle q, p_{ba} \rangle$ ,  $M(C[p_{aa}])/v \cdot (3, 1) = a$ , and  $M(C[p_{ba}])/v \cdot (3, 1) = b$ . In this way we obtain that  $\text{diff}(M) = \{a, b\} \cup \{\langle q, p_{yz} \rangle \mid y, z \in \{a, b\}\}$ . Thus,  $\text{maxdiff}(M) = 0$ .

Clearly, there is a dtop  $N$  equivalent to  $M$ . It has three states  $q, q_1, q_2$ , axiom  $q(x_0)$ , and rules  $q(yz) \rightarrow yz$ ,

$$q(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow \sigma(q(x_1), q(x_2), \#(q_1(x_1), q_2(x_2))),$$

$$q_i(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow q_i(x_i) \text{ for } i = 1, 2, \quad q_1(yz) \rightarrow y, \text{ and } q_2(yz) \rightarrow z \text{ for } y, z \in \{a, b\}.$$

□

*Example 10.* Let  $\Sigma = \{\sigma^{(2)}, a^{(0)}\}$  and  $\Delta = \{e^{(0)}, o^{(0)}\}$ , and consider the following total dtla  $M$  that translates every tree  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  into  $e$  if  $\text{size}(s)$  is even and into  $o$  if it is odd. Its look-ahead automaton has two states  $p_e$  and  $p_o$  with  $\delta(a) = p_o$ ,  $\delta(\sigma, p_e, p_e) = \delta(\sigma, p_o, p_o) = p_e$ , and  $\delta(\sigma, p_e, p_o) = \delta(\sigma, p_o, p_e) = p_o$ . Its set of states is empty, and its axioms are  $A(p_e) = e$  and  $A(p_o) = o$ .

For every  $\Sigma$ -context  $C$ ,  $\{M(C[p_e]), M(C[p_o])\} = \{e, o\}$ . Hence  $\text{diff}(M) = \{e, o\}$  and  $\text{maxdiff}(M) = 0$ . Although  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite, there is obviously no dtop equivalent to  $M$ . □

## 5 Normal Forms

In this section we prove normal forms for total dtlas. For each of these normal forms we consider its effect on  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$ . We start with a simple normal form in which each axiom consists of one state, more precisely, is in  $Q(\{x_0\})$ .

A dtla  $M$  is *initialized* if for every  $p \in P$  there is a state  $q_{0,p}$  such that  $A(p) = q_{0,p}(x_0)$ . The states  $q_{0,p}$  are called initial states; they are not necessarily distinct. Note that for an initialized dtla,  $M(s) = q_M(s)$  where  $q = q_{0,p}$  and  $p = \delta(s)$ , for every  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ .

Recall that  $\text{maxrhs}(M)$  is the maximal height of the axioms and the right-hand sides of the rules of  $M$ .

**Lemma 11.** *For every total dtla  $M$  an equivalent initialized dtla  $M'$  can be constructed, with the same look-ahead automaton as  $M$ , such that  $|Q_{M'}| = |Q_M| + 1$ ,  $\text{maxrhs}(M') \leq 2 \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M)$  and*

$$\text{maxdiff}(M') \leq \text{maxdiff}(M) \leq \max\{\text{maxdiff}(M'), \text{maxrhs}(M)\}.$$

*If  $M$  is ultralinear or b-erasing, then so is  $M'$ .*

*Proof.* To construct  $M'$  from  $M$ , we introduce a new state  $q_0$ . For every  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$  and  $p_1, \dots, p_k \in P$  we add the rule

$$q_0(a(x_1:p_1, \dots, x_k:p_k)) \rightarrow A(p)[q(x_0) \leftarrow \text{rhs}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k) \mid q \in Q],^9$$

where  $p = \delta(a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$ . Finally, we change  $A(p)$  into  $q_0(x_0)$  for every  $p \in P$ . Then  $M'$  is initialized, with  $q_{0,p} = q_0$  for all  $p \in P$ . It should be clear from Lemma 2(3/4) that  $M'$  is equivalent to  $M$ . It should also be clear that for every  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p \in P$ , if  $C \neq \perp$  then  $M'(C[p]) = M(C[p])$ . Moreover, for  $C = \perp$  we have  $M'(p) = \langle q_0, p \rangle$  and  $M(p) = A(p)[q(x_0) \leftarrow \langle q, p \rangle \mid q \in Q]$ . Since  $\text{ht}(M'(p)/\varepsilon) = 0$  and  $\text{ht}(M(p)/v) \leq \text{ht}(A(p)) \leq \text{maxrhs}(M)$  for every  $v \in V(M(p))$ , this implies the required inequalities for  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$  and  $\text{maxdiff}(M')$ .

If  $M$  is ultralinear with mapping  $\mu$ , then we can assume that  $\mu(q) > 0$  for all  $q$ , and then  $M'$  is ultralinear by extending  $\mu$  with  $\mu(q_0) = 0$ . If  $M$  is b-erasing then so is  $M'$ , because a cycle in  $E_{M'}$  does not contain  $q_0$  and hence is also a cycle in  $E_M$ .  $\square$

Note that it follows from the inequalities for  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$  and  $\text{maxdiff}(M')$  that if  $h(M')$  is a difference bound for  $M'$ , then  $\max\{h(M'), \text{maxrhs}(M)\}$  is a difference bound for  $M$ . In fact, if  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite, then  $\text{diff}(M')$  is finite because  $\text{maxdiff}(M') \leq \text{maxdiff}(M)$ , hence  $\text{maxdiff}(M') \leq h(M')$ , from which it follows that  $\text{maxdiff}(M) \leq \max\{\text{maxdiff}(M'), \text{maxrhs}(M)\} \leq \max\{h(M'), \text{maxrhs}(M)\}$ .

We continue with a basic and technically convenient normal form in which every state of the dtla only translates input trees that have the same look-ahead state; moreover, the rules satisfy a generalized completeness condition.

<sup>9</sup> Note that the right-hand side of this rule is defined: since every look-ahead state is reachable, there exist trees  $s_i$  with  $\delta(s_i) = p_i$ ; then  $\delta(a(s_1, \dots, s_k)) = p$  and since  $M(a(s_1, \dots, s_k))$  is defined because  $M$  is total,  $\text{rhs}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$  is defined for every  $q$  that occurs in  $A(p)$ .

A dtla  $M$  is *look-ahead uniform* (for short, *la-uniform*)<sup>10</sup> if there is a mapping  $\rho : Q \rightarrow P$  (called *la-map*) satisfying the following conditions, for all  $p \in P$  and  $q, \bar{q} \in Q$ :

- (1) If  $q(x_0)$  occurs in  $A(p)$ , then  $\rho(q) = p$ .
- (2) For every rule  $q(a(x_1:p_1, \dots, x_k:p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  in  $R$ ,
  - (a)  $\rho(q) = \delta(a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$  and
  - (b) if  $\bar{q}(x_i)$  occurs in  $\zeta$ , then  $\rho(\bar{q}) = p_i$ .
- (3) For every  $q \in Q$ ,  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ , and  $p_1, \dots, p_k \in P$  such that  $\delta(a, p_1, \dots, p_k) = \rho(q)$ , there is a rule  $q(a(x_1:p_1, \dots, x_k:p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  in  $R$ .

Note that a dtop is la-uniform if and only if it is complete (if and only if it is total, by Lemma 5). Clearly, the dtla  $M$  of Example 7 is la-uniform with  $\rho(q) = p_b$ , and similarly, the one of Example 8 is la-uniform with  $\rho(q) = p_a$ .

We will need the following obvious properties of an la-uniform dtla.

**Lemma 12.** *Let  $M$  be an la-uniform dtla with la-map  $\rho$ .*

- (1)  $\text{dom}(\llbracket q \rrbracket_M) = \llbracket \rho(q) \rrbracket_M$  for every  $q \in Q$ .
- (2)  $M$  is total.
- (3)  $M^\circ$  is la-uniform with the same la-map  $\rho$  as  $M$ .
- (4) Let  $\xi$  be a reachable sentential form for  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ .  
For all  $v \in V(\xi)$ ,  $q \in Q$ , and  $u \in V(s)$ , if  $\xi/v = q(u)$  then  $\rho(q) = \delta(s/u)$ .

*Proof.* (1) We prove by structural induction on  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  that  $q_M(s)$  is defined if and only if  $\delta(s) = \rho(q)$ . Let  $s = a(s_1, \dots, s_k)$  and  $\delta(s_i) = p_i$  for  $i \in [k]$ . Then  $\delta(s) = \delta(a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$ . Thus, by conditions (2)(a) and (3) above,  $\delta(s) = \rho(q)$  if and only if there is a rule  $q(a(x_1:p_1, \dots, x_k:p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  in  $R$ . For such a rule, by condition (2)(b) above, if  $\bar{q}(x_i)$  occurs in  $\zeta$ , then  $\rho(\bar{q}) = p_i$  and hence, by induction,  $\bar{q}_M(s_i)$  is defined. It now follows from Lemma 2(4) that  $\delta(s) = \rho(q)$  if and only if  $q_M(s)$  is defined.

(2) This is immediate from (1) and Lemma 2(3), by condition (1) above.

(3) By (1), the set  $R^\circ$  of rules of  $M^\circ$  is obtained from  $R$  by adding all the rules  $q(p) \rightarrow \langle q, p \rangle$  such that  $\rho(q) = p$ . Hence  $\rho$  also satisfies conditions (2) and (3) above for  $M^\circ$  (and condition (1) above, because  $M^\circ$  has the same axioms as  $M$ ).

(4) The easy proof is by induction on the length of the computation  $A(\delta(s))[x_0 \leftarrow \varepsilon] \Rightarrow_s^* \xi$ , using conditions (1) and (2) above.  $\square$

Note that by (3) of this lemma, for every  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p \in P$ , the tree  $M(C[p])$  is in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_p \times \{p\})$  where  $Q_p = \{q \in Q \mid \rho(q) = p\}$ .

We now prove that la-uniformity is a normal form for total dtlas.

**Lemma 13.** *For every total dtla  $M$  an equivalent la-uniform dtla  $M'$  can be constructed, with the same look-ahead automaton as  $M$ , such that  $|Q_{M'}| = |Q_M| \cdot |P_M|$ ,  $\text{maxrhs}(M') = \text{maxrhs}(M)$ , and  $\text{maxdiff}(M') = \text{maxdiff}(M)$ . If  $M$  is initialized, ultralinear or b-erasing, then so is  $M'$ .*

<sup>10</sup> This notion is closely related to the notion of a *uniform* i-transducer in [8].

*Proof.* We observe that it may be assumed that  $M$  is complete: if  $\text{rhs}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$  is undefined, then we add the (dummy) rule  $q(a(x_1 : p_1, \dots, x_k : p_k)) \rightarrow d$  where  $d$  is any element of  $\Delta^{(0)}$ .

We construct  $M'$  as follows. The state set of  $M'$  is  $Q_{M'} = Q \times P$ . Every axiom  $A(p)$  of  $M$  is changed into  $A(p)[q(x_0) \leftarrow \langle q, p \rangle(x_0) \mid q \in Q]$ , and every rule

$$q(a(x_1 : p_1, \dots, x_k : p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$$

is changed into the rule

$$\langle q, p \rangle(a(x_1 : p_1, \dots, x_k : p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta[\bar{q}(x_i) \leftarrow \langle \bar{q}, p_i \rangle(x_i) \mid \bar{q} \in Q, i \in [k]]$$

where  $p = \delta(a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$ .

It should be clear that  $M'$  satisfies conditions (1) and (2) of the definition of la-uniformity with la-map  $\rho$  such that  $\rho(\langle q, p \rangle) = p$ ; since  $M$  is complete, condition (3) is also satisfied. Hence  $M'$  is la-uniform.

Since  $M$  and  $M'$  are total, so are  $M^\circ$  and  $(M')^\circ$  (see the proof of Lemma 3). Obviously, for every computation of  $(M')^\circ$  on an input tree  $\bar{s} \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(P)$ , one obtains a computation of  $M^\circ$  on that input tree by changing every  $\langle q, p \rangle(u)$  that occurs in a sentential form into  $q(u)$ , and every  $\langle \langle q, p \rangle, p \rangle$  into  $\langle q, p \rangle$ . Hence  $M'(\bar{s}) = M(\bar{s})[\langle q, p \rangle \leftarrow \langle \langle q, p \rangle, p \rangle \mid q \in Q, p \in P]$ . This implies that  $M'$  is equivalent to  $M$ . It also implies that  $\text{maxdiff}(M') = \text{maxdiff}(M)$ , as can easily be verified.

Obviously, if  $M$  is ultralinear with mapping  $\mu_M : Q \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ , then so is  $M'$  with the mapping  $\mu$  such that  $\mu(\langle q, p \rangle) = \mu_M(q)$ . Moreover, if there is an edge from  $\langle q, p \rangle$  to  $\langle q', p_j \rangle$  in  $E_{M'}$ , then there is an edge from  $q$  to  $q'$  in  $E_M$ . Hence, if  $M$  is b-erasing, then so is  $M'$ .  $\square$

Note that since  $\text{maxdiff}(M') = \text{maxdiff}(M)$ , the la-uniform dtla  $M'$  has the same difference bounds as  $M$ .

*Example 14.* The dtla  $M$  of Example 9 is not la-uniform. We change it into an la-uniform dtla by the construction in the proof of Lemma 13 (but keep calling it  $M$ ). Then it has set of states  $Q = \{q_{yz} \mid y, z \in \{a, b\}\}$  where  $q_{yz}$  abbreviates  $\langle q, p_{yz} \rangle$ , so  $\rho(q_{yz}) = p_{yz}$ . Its axioms are  $A(p_{yz}) = q_{yz}(x_0)$ , and its rules are  $q_{yz}(yz) \rightarrow yz$  and

$$q_{wz}(\sigma(x_1 : p_{wx}, x_2 : p_{yz})) \rightarrow \sigma(q_{wx}(x_1), q_{yz}(x_2), \#(w, z))$$

for all  $w, x, y, z \in \{a, b\}$ .  $\square$

From now on we mainly consider la-uniform dtlas. For an la-uniform dtla  $M$ , its la-map will be denoted  $\rho$  (or  $\rho_M$  when necessary).

Finally we generalize the normal form for dtops in [8] to total dtlas. For this normal form it is essential that dtlas need not be initialized, i.e., that arbitrary axioms are allowed.

A dtla  $M$  is *earliest* if it is la-uniform and, for every state  $q$  of  $M$ , the set

$$\text{rlabs}_M(q) := \{\text{lab}(q_M(s), \varepsilon) \mid s \in \text{dom}(\llbracket q \rrbracket_M)\} \subseteq \Delta$$



is not a singleton.<sup>11</sup> In other words,  $M$  is *not* earliest if it has a state  $q$  for which the roots of all output trees  $q_M(s)$  have the same label; intuitively, the node with that label could be produced earlier in the computation of  $M$ . A dtla  $M$  is *canonical* if it is earliest and  $\llbracket q \rrbracket_M \neq \llbracket q' \rrbracket_M$  for all distinct states  $q, q'$  of  $M$ . Since it is required that  $M$  is la-uniform, the earliest and canonical properties are appropriately relativized with respect to each look-ahead state, see Lemma 12(1).

It is easy to see that the dtla  $M$  of Example 14 (which is the la-uniform version of the dtla of Example 9) is canonical: for all  $y, z \in \{a, b\}$ ,  $\text{rlabs}_M(q_{yz}) = \{yz, \sigma\}$  and  $\llbracket q_{yz} \rrbracket_M$  is the restriction of  $\llbracket M \rrbracket$  to  $\llbracket p_{yz} \rrbracket_M$ .

For an la-uniform dtla  $M$  the sets  $\text{rlabs}_M(q)$  can be computed in a standard way. In fact, consider the directed graph with set of nodes  $Q \cup \Delta$  and with the following edges: for every rule  $q(a(x_1 : p_1, \dots, x_k : p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  of  $M$ , if  $\text{lab}(\zeta, \varepsilon) = d \in \Delta$  then there is an edge  $q \rightarrow d$ , and if  $\zeta = q'(x_j)$  then there is an edge  $q \rightarrow q'$ .<sup>12</sup> It is straightforward to show that  $\text{rlabs}_M(q) = \{d \in \Delta \mid q \rightarrow^* d\}$ , as follows:

( $\subseteq$ ) Structural induction on  $s = a(s_1, \dots, s_k)$ , such that  $q_M(s)$  has root label  $d$ . By Lemma 2(4),  $q_M(s) = \zeta[\bar{q}(x_i) \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(s_i) \mid \bar{q} \in Q, i \in [k]]$  where  $\zeta = \text{rhs}(q, s, \varepsilon)$ . If  $\zeta$  has root label  $d \in \Delta$ , then there is an edge  $q \rightarrow d$ . If  $\zeta = q'(x_j)$ , then  $q_M(s) = q'_M(s_j)$  and so  $q \rightarrow q' \rightarrow^* d$  by induction.

( $\supseteq$ ) Induction on the length of  $q \rightarrow^* d$ . If  $q \rightarrow d$  then  $q_M(a(s_1, \dots, s_k)) = \zeta[\bar{q}(x_i) \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(s_i) \mid \bar{q} \in Q, i \in [k]]$  by Lemma 2(4), for any  $s_i \in \llbracket p_i \rrbracket$ , and so  $q_M(a(s_1, \dots, s_k))$  has root label  $d$ . We have used that  $M$  is la-uniform: if  $\bar{q}(x_i)$  occurs in  $\zeta$ , then  $\rho(\bar{q}) = p_i$  and hence  $\bar{q}_M(s_i)$  is defined by Lemma 12(1). If  $q \rightarrow q' \rightarrow^* d$  then  $q_M(a(s_1, \dots, s_k)) = q'_M(s_j)$  has root label  $d$ , because by induction there exists  $s_j$  such that  $q'_M(s_j)$  has root label  $d$ .

We now prove that canonicalness is a normal form for total dtlas. For an la-uniform dtla  $M$ , let  $\text{fix}(M)$  be a fixed subset of  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  such that for every  $p \in P$  there is a unique  $s \in \text{fix}(M)$  with  $\delta(s) = p$ . Thus,  $\text{fix}(M)$  is a set of representatives of the equivalence classes  $\llbracket p \rrbracket$ ,  $p \in P$ . Since every  $\llbracket p \rrbracket$  is a regular tree language, a particular  $\text{fix}(M)$  can be computed from  $M$ . For every  $p \in P$ , let  $s_p$  be the unique tree in  $\text{fix}(M)$  with  $\delta(s_p) = p$ . We define

$$\text{sumfix}(M) = \sum_{q \in Q} \text{size}(q_M(s_{\rho(q)})).$$

Note that  $\text{sumfix}(M)$  is in  $\mathbb{N}$  and can be computed from  $M$ .

**Theorem 15.** *For every la-uniform dtla  $M$  an equivalent canonical dtla  $\text{can}(M)$  can be constructed, with the same look-ahead automaton as  $M$ , such that*

$$\text{maxdiff}(M) - \text{sumfix}(M) \leq \text{maxdiff}(\text{can}(M)) \leq \text{maxdiff}(M) + \text{sumfix}(M).$$

*Proof.* We first prove the statement of this theorem for the case where  $M$  is earliest. Since the equivalence of two dtlas is decidable (see [11] and [8, Corollary 19]), it is

<sup>11</sup> This is equivalent with requiring that  $\cap\{q_M(s) \mid s \in \text{dom}(\llbracket q \rrbracket_M)\} = \perp$ , cf. the definition of earliest in [8].

<sup>12</sup> Note that the subgraph induced by  $Q$  is the graph  $E_M$ , as in the definition of a b-erasing dtla in Section 3.

decidable for two states  $q, q'$  of  $M$  whether or not  $\llbracket q \rrbracket_M = \llbracket q' \rrbracket_M$ . If this holds, then  $q'$  can be replaced by  $q$  in every axiom and every right-hand side of a rule, thus making  $q'$  unreachable and hence superfluous. Since in  $M(C[p])$  every  $\langle q', p \rangle$  is replaced by  $\langle q, p \rangle$ ,  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$  does not change. Thus, repeating this procedure one obtains a canonical dtla  $\text{can}(M)$  equivalent to  $M$ , with  $\text{maxdiff}(\text{can}(M)) = \text{maxdiff}(M)$ .

For the interested reader we observe that for an earliest dtla  $M$  the equivalence relation  $\equiv$  on  $Q$  defined by  $q \equiv q'$  if and only if  $\llbracket q \rrbracket_M = \llbracket q' \rrbracket_M$ , can in fact easily be computed by fixpoint iteration, because it is the largest equivalence relation on  $Q$  such that if  $q \equiv q'$  then (a)  $\rho(q) = \rho(q')$  and (b) if  $\text{rhs}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k) = t[q_1(x_{i_1}), \dots, q_r(x_{i_r})]$  where  $t \in \mathcal{P}_\Sigma$  and  $r = |V_\perp(t)|$ , then  $\text{rhs}(q', a, p_1, \dots, p_k) = t[q'_1(x_{i_1}), \dots, q'_r(x_{i_r})]$  with  $q_j \equiv q'_j$  for every  $j \in [r]$ . The straightforward proof of this is left to the reader, cf. the proof of [8, Theorem 13]. Thus, the full dtla equivalence test of [11, 8] is not needed.

It remains to be proved that every la-uniform dtla  $M$  can be transformed into an equivalent earliest dtla  $M'$ , with the same look-ahead automaton, such that the distance between  $\text{maxdiff}(M')$  and  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$  is at most  $\text{sumfix}(M)$ . If  $M$  is not earliest, then we obtain  $M'$  by repeatedly applying the following transformation step.

*Transformation.* We transform  $M$  into a dtla  $N$  with the same look-ahead automaton. Let  $Q_1$  be the (nonempty) set of states  $q \in Q$  such that  $\text{rlabs}_M(q)$  is a singleton, and for every  $q \in Q_1$  let  $\text{rlabs}_M(q) = \{d_q\}$  and  $m_q = \text{rk}(d_q)$ . The set of states of  $N$  is

$$Q_N := (Q - Q_1) \cup \{\langle q, i \rangle \mid q \in Q_1, i \in [m_q]\}.$$

When  $M$  arrives in state  $q \in Q_1$  at a node  $u$  of an input tree  $s$ ,  $N$  will first output the symbol  $d_q$  and then arrive at node  $u$  in the states  $\langle q, 1 \rangle, \dots, \langle q, m_q \rangle$ , to compute the direct subtrees of the tree  $q_M(s/u)$ , where  $\langle q, i \rangle$  computes the  $i$ th direct subtree  $q_M(s/u)/i$ . So, to describe  $N$ , we define for every tree  $\zeta \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q(\Omega))$  where  $\Omega$  is any set of symbols of rank 0, the tree  $\zeta\Phi_\Omega = \zeta[q(\omega) \leftarrow d_q(\langle q, 1 \rangle(\omega), \dots, \langle q, m_q \rangle(\omega)) \mid q \in Q_1, \omega \in \Omega]$ . For every  $p \in P$ , the  $p$ -axiom of  $N$  is  $A(p)\Phi_{\{x_0\}}$ . Every rule  $q(a(x_1 : p_1, \dots, x_k : p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  is changed into the rule  $q(a(x_1 : p_1, \dots, x_k : p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta\Phi_{X_k}$  if  $q \in Q - Q_1$ , and into the  $m_q$  rules  $\langle q, i \rangle(a(x_1 : p_1, \dots, x_k : p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta\Phi_{X_k}/i$  if  $q \in Q_1$ . Note that in the latter case the root of  $\zeta\Phi_{X_k}$  has label  $d_q$  and so its  $i$ th direct subtree is well defined.<sup>13</sup>

If  $M$  has la-map  $\rho$ , then  $N$  is la-uniform with la-map  $\rho_N$  such that  $\rho_N(q) = \rho(q)$  for  $q \in Q - Q_1$  and  $\rho_N(\langle q, i \rangle) = \rho(q)$  for  $q \in Q_1$  and  $i \in [m_q]$ .

It should be clear intuitively that  $N$  is equivalent to  $M$ . Formally it can easily be shown for every  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  and every reachable sentential form  $\xi$  of  $M$  for  $s$ , that  $\xi\Phi_{V(s)}$  is a reachable sentential form of  $N$  for  $s$  (where each computation step of  $M$  is simulated by one or  $m_q$  computation steps of  $N$ ), and hence  $N(s) = M(s)$ . We will compute  $\text{maxdiff}(N)$  below; to do that we need to extend the previous statement to trees  $\bar{s} \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(P)$ . Let  $\Psi$  be the substitution  $[\langle q, p \rangle \leftarrow d_q(\langle q, 1 \rangle(p), \dots, \langle q, m_q \rangle(p)) \mid q \in Q_1, p \in P]$ . Then, for every reachable sentential form  $\xi$  of  $M^\circ$  for  $\bar{s}$ , the tree  $\xi\Phi_{V(s)}\Psi$  is a reachable sentential form of  $N^\circ$  for  $\bar{s}$ , and hence  $N(\bar{s}) = M(\bar{s})\Psi$ .

<sup>13</sup> This is clear if  $\text{lab}(\zeta, \varepsilon) = d_q$ . If  $\zeta = q'(x_j)$ , then  $q' \in Q_1$  and  $d_{q'} = d_q$ ; so  $\zeta\Phi_{X_k} = d_q(\langle q', 1 \rangle(x_j), \dots, \langle q', m_q \rangle(x_j))$  and one obtains the rules  $\langle q, i \rangle(a(x_1 : p_1, \dots, x_k : p_k)) \rightarrow \langle q', i \rangle(x_j)$  for  $i \in [m_q]$ .

*Repetition.* Using Lemma 2(3/4), it can easily be shown for every  $q \in Q$  and  $s \in \llbracket \rho(q) \rrbracket$ , that  $q_N(s) = q_M(s)$  if  $q \notin Q_1$ , and that  $\langle q, i \rangle_N(s) = q_M(s)/i$  for every  $i \in [m_q]$  if  $q \in Q_1$ . From this (and assuming that  $\text{fix}(N) = \text{fix}(M)$ ), it should be clear that  $\text{sumfix}(N) < \text{sumfix}(M)$ , because, for  $q \in Q_1$  and  $s \in \llbracket \rho(q) \rrbracket$ ,

$$\sum_{i \in [m_q]} \text{size}(\langle q, i \rangle_N(s)) = \sum_{i \in [m_q]} \text{size}(q_M(s)/i) = \text{size}(q_M(s)) - 1.$$

Hence, the repetition of the above transformation stops after at most  $\text{sumfix}(M)$  steps, with an earliest dtla  $M'$  equivalent to  $M$ .

*Difference trees.* It remains to prove that the distance between  $\text{maxdiff}(N)$  and  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$  is at most 1, i.e., that  $\text{maxdiff}(N) \leq \text{maxdiff}(M) + 1$  and  $\text{maxdiff}(M) \leq \text{maxdiff}(N) + 1$ . Consider  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p, p' \in P$  with  $p \neq p'$ . Recall from above that  $N(C[p]) = M(C[p])\Psi = M(C[p])[\langle q, p \rangle \leftarrow d_q(\langle \langle q, 1 \rangle, p \rangle, \dots, \langle \langle q, m_q \rangle, p \rangle) \mid q \in Q_1]$  and similarly for  $p'$ . We observe that if  $v$  is a node of  $M(C[p])$ , then each proper ancestor of  $v$  has the same label in  $M(C[p])$  and  $N(C[p])$ , and similarly for  $p'$ .

Let  $v$  be a difference node of  $N(C[p])$  and  $N(C[p'])$  that is not a leaf of  $N(C[p])$ . Then  $v \in V(M(C[p]))$ . If also  $v \in V(M(C[p']))$ , then Lemma 6 implies that  $v$  is also a difference node of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$  (in fact, by the above observation every proper ancestor of  $v$  has the same label in  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$ ; if  $v$  would have the same label in  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$ , then that label would be in  $\Delta$  because  $p \neq p'$ , and hence  $v$  would have the same label in  $N(C[p])$  and  $N(C[p'])$ ). Consequently,  $\text{ht}(N(C[p])/v) = \text{ht}(M(C[p])\Psi/v) \leq \text{ht}(M(C[p])/v) + 1 \leq \text{maxdiff}(M) + 1$ . If  $v \notin V(M(C[p']))$ , then the parent  $\hat{v}$  of  $v$  is a difference node of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$  (in fact, the label of  $\hat{v}$  in  $M(C[p'])$  is  $\langle q, p' \rangle$  for some  $q \in Q_1$ , and so  $\hat{v}$  has different labels in  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$  because  $p \neq p'$ ). Hence, in this case,  $\text{ht}(N(C[p])/v) \leq \text{ht}(N(C[p])/\hat{v}) \leq \text{ht}(M(C[p])/\hat{v}) + 1 \leq \text{maxdiff}(M) + 1$ . This proves that  $\text{maxdiff}(N) \leq \text{maxdiff}(M) + 1$ .

Now let  $v$  be a difference node of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$  that is not a leaf of  $M(C[p])$ ; note that  $\text{lab}(N(C[p]), v) = \text{lab}(M(C[p]), v) \in \Delta$ . If  $v$  is also a difference node of  $N(C[p])$  and  $N(C[p'])$ , then  $\text{ht}(M(C[p])/v) \leq \text{ht}(M(C[p])\Psi/v) = \text{ht}(N(C[p])/v) \leq \text{maxdiff}(N)$ . Now assume that  $v$  is not a difference node of  $N(C[p])$  and  $N(C[p'])$ . Then, by Lemma 6, the label of  $v$  in  $M(C[p'])$  is  $\langle q, p' \rangle$  for some  $q \in Q_1$  and  $\text{lab}(N(C[p]), v) = \text{lab}(N(C[p']), v) = d_q$ . This implies, again by Lemma 6, that the children of  $v$  are difference nodes of  $N(C[p])$  and  $N(C[p'])$ . Let  $vi$  be a child of  $v$  for which  $\text{ht}(M(C[p])/vi)$  is maximal. Then we have  $\text{ht}(M(C[p])/v) = \text{ht}(M(C[p])/vi) + 1 \leq \text{ht}(N(C[p])/vi) + 1 \leq \text{maxdiff}(N) + 1$ . This proves that  $\text{maxdiff}(M) \leq \text{maxdiff}(N) + 1$ .  $\square$

Note that it follows from the inequalities for  $\text{maxdiff}(\text{can}(M))$  that if  $h(M)$  is a difference bound for  $M$ , then  $h(M) + \text{sumfix}(M)$  is a difference bound for  $\text{can}(M)$ . In fact (similar to the argument after Lemma 11), if  $\text{diff}(\text{can}(M))$  is finite, then  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite because  $\text{maxdiff}(M) \leq \text{maxdiff}(\text{can}(M)) + \text{sumfix}(M)$ , hence  $\text{maxdiff}(M) \leq h(M)$  and hence  $\text{maxdiff}(\text{can}(M)) \leq \text{maxdiff}(M) + \text{sumfix}(M) \leq h(M) + \text{sumfix}(M)$ .

Note also that the transformation in the above proof does not preserve the ultralinear property (as can be seen in the next example).

*Example 16.* In this example we denote by  $Y$  the nonempty subsets of  $\{a, b\}$ , i.e.,  $Y = \{\{a\}, \{b\}, \{a, b\}\}$ . Let  $\Sigma = \{\sigma^{(2)}, a^{(0)}, b^{(0)}\}$  and  $\Delta = \{\sigma_y^{(2)} \mid y \in Y\} \cup \{a^{(0)}, b^{(0)}\}$ . We consider an la-uniform dtla  $M$  such that  $M(a) = a$ ,  $M(b) = b$ , and  $M(\sigma(s_1, s_2)) = \sigma_y(M(s_1), M(s_2))$  for  $s_1, s_2 \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , where  $y$  is the set of labels of the leaves of  $\sigma(s_1, s_2)$ . Its set of look-ahead states is  $P = \{p_y \mid y \in Y\}$  and  $\delta$  is defined in the obvious way:  $\delta(a) = \{a\}$ ,  $\delta(b) = \{b\}$ , and  $\delta(\sigma, p_y, p_z) = p_{y \cup z}$  for  $y, z \in Y$ . Its set of states is  $Q = \{q_y \mid y \in Y\}$  with  $\rho(q_y) = p_y$ , its axioms are  $A(p_y) = q_y(x_0)$  for every  $y \in Y$ , and its set  $R$  consists of the rules  $q_{\{a\}}(a) \rightarrow a$ ,  $q_{\{b\}}(b) \rightarrow b$ , and

$$q_{y \cup z}(\sigma(x_1 : p_y, x_2 : p_z)) \rightarrow \sigma_y(q_y(x_1), q_z(x_2))$$

for  $y, z \in Y$ .

The dtla  $M_1$  that is obtained from  $M$  by identifying all its states into one state  $q$ , is equivalent to  $M$ ; it has  $\text{rlabs}_{M_1}(q) = \Delta$ , but it is not la-uniform. However,  $M$  is not earliest: in fact,  $\text{rlabs}_M(q_{\{a\}}) = \{\sigma_{\{a\}}, a\}$  and  $\text{rlabs}_M(q_{\{b\}}) = \{\sigma_{\{b\}}, b\}$ , but  $\text{rlabs}_M(q_{\{a, b\}}) = \{\sigma_{\{a, b\}}\}$ . Let  $N$  be the dtla obtained from  $M$  by applying the transformation in the proof of Theorem 15 once. Then  $Q_1 = \{q_{\{a, b\}}\}$ . We will write the states  $\langle q_{\{a, b\}}, 1 \rangle$  and  $\langle q_{\{a, b\}}, 2 \rangle$  as  $q_{1\{a, b\}}$  and  $q_{2\{a, b\}}$ , respectively. So,  $N$  has states  $q_{\{a\}}$ ,  $q_{\{b\}}$ ,  $q_{1\{a, b\}}$ , and  $q_{2\{a, b\}}$ . Its axioms are  $A_N(p_y) = q_y(x_0)$  for  $y = \{a\}$  or  $y = \{b\}$  (just as in  $M$ ), and  $A_N(p_y) = \sigma_y(q_{1y}(x_0), q_{2y}(x_0))$  for  $y = \{a, b\}$ . For  $y = \{a\}$  or  $y = \{b\}$ , its set  $R_N$  of rules contains the rule

$$q_y(\sigma(x_1 : p_y, x_2 : p_y)) \rightarrow \sigma_y(q_y(x_1), q_y(x_2))$$

plus the rules  $q_{\{a\}}(a) \rightarrow a$  and  $q_{\{b\}}(b) \rightarrow b$  (just as in  $M$ ). Moreover, for  $y = \{a, b\}$ ,  $R_N$  contains the rules

$$\begin{aligned} q_{1y}(\sigma(x_1 : p_y, x_2 : p_z)) &\rightarrow \sigma_y(q_{1y}(x_1), q_{2y}(x_1)) \\ q_{2y}(\sigma(x_1 : p_z, x_2 : p_y)) &\rightarrow \sigma_y(q_{1y}(x_2), q_{2y}(x_2)) \end{aligned}$$

for all  $z \in Y$ , plus the rules

$$\begin{aligned} q_{1y}(\sigma(x_1 : p_w, x_2 : p_z)) &\rightarrow q_w(x_1) \\ q_{2y}(\sigma(x_1 : p_z, x_2 : p_w)) &\rightarrow q_w(x_2) \end{aligned}$$

for all  $w, z \in Y$  with  $w \neq y$  and  $w \cup z = y$ . For  $N$  we have  $\text{rlabs}_N(q_{\{a\}}) = \{\sigma_{\{a\}}, a\}$  and  $\text{rlabs}_N(q_{\{b\}}) = \{\sigma_{\{b\}}, b\}$  as for  $M$ , and we have  $\text{rlabs}_N(q_{1\{a, b\}}) = \text{rlabs}_N(q_{2\{a, b\}}) = \Delta$ . Hence  $N$  is earliest. Obviously,  $N$  is also canonical, and so  $N = \text{can}(M)$ .  $\square$

## 6 Difference Tuples

Let  $M$  be a total dtpla and let  $P = \{\hat{p}_1, \dots, \hat{p}_n\}$ , where the order of the look-ahead states is fixed as indicated. Recall that a dtpla is a proper dtla, i.e., a dtla that is not a dtop, hence  $n \geq 2$ . For a given context  $C$  consider the trees  $M(C[\hat{p}_1]), \dots, M(C[\hat{p}_n])$ . Intuitively, the largest common prefix of all these trees does *not* depend on the look-ahead. In contrast, the subtrees of the above trees which are not part of the largest common prefix, *do* depend on the look-ahead information.

For trees  $t_1, \dots, t_n \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q \times P)$  we define

$$\text{diftup}(t_1, \dots, t_n) := \{(t_1/v, \dots, t_n/v) \mid v \in V_\perp(\cap\{t_1, \dots, t_n\})\},$$

which is a set of  $n$ -tuples in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q \times P)^n$ . We define the *set of difference tuples* of  $M$  as

$$\text{diftup}(M) := \bigcup_{C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma} \text{diftup}(M(C[\hat{p}_1]), \dots, M(C[\hat{p}_n])).$$

For a  $\Sigma$ -context  $C$ , we define  $\text{pref}(M, C) \in \mathcal{P}_\Delta$  as

$$\text{pref}(M, C) = \cap\{M(C[p]) \mid p \in P\}.$$

By this definition,  $\text{diftup}(M(C[\hat{p}_1]), \dots, M(C[\hat{p}_n]))$  is the set of all difference tuples  $(M(C[\hat{p}_1])/v, \dots, M(C[\hat{p}_n])/v)$  such that  $v \in V_\perp(\text{pref}(M, C))$ . Note that  $\text{pref}(M, C)$  is a  $\Delta$ -pattern because a node with label  $\langle q, \hat{p}_i \rangle$  in  $M(C[\hat{p}_i])$  cannot have the same label in  $M(C[\hat{p}_j])$  for  $i \neq j$ .

Difference tuples are introduced for the following reason, cf. Lemma 4. We wish to decide whether  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop. If there exists a dtop  $N$  that is equivalent to  $M$ , then we expect intuitively for any  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , that  $N(C[s]) = t[q_{1N}(s), \dots, q_{rN}(s)]$  where  $t = \text{pref}(M, C) = \cap\{M(C[\hat{p}_1]), \dots, M(C[\hat{p}_n])\}$  and  $r = |V_\perp(t)|$ ; in other words, since  $N$  does not know the look-ahead state  $\delta_M(s)$  of  $s$ , it translates  $C$  into the largest common prefix of the output trees  $M(C[\hat{p}_1]), \dots, M(C[\hat{p}_n])$ . Moreover, if the  $i$ th occurrence of  $\perp$  is at node  $v_i$  of  $t$  for  $i \in [r]$ , then we expect the difference tuple  $(M(C[\hat{p}_1])/v_i, \dots, M(C[\hat{p}_n])/v_i)$  to be stored in the state  $q_i$  of  $N$ ; in this way  $N$  is prepared to continue its simulation of  $M$  on the subtree  $s$ . This will be proved in Lemma 21, under the condition that  $M$  is canonical and  $N$  is earliest. If  $N$  is also canonical, then its states are in one-to-one correspondence with the difference tuples of  $M$ , as will be proved in Lemma 22.

Before giving some examples, we show that the maximal height of the components of the difference tuples of  $M$  is  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$ , defined in Section 4. This implies that  $\text{diftup}(M)$  is finite if and only if  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite.

**Lemma 17.** *Let  $M$  be a total dtpla. Then*

$$\text{maxdiff}(M) = \max\{\text{ht}(M(C[p])/v) \mid C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma, p \in P, v \in V_\perp(\text{pref}(M, C))\}.$$

*Proof.* ( $\leq$ ) We show that every difference tree is a subtree of a component of a difference tuple. Consider a difference tree  $M(C[p])/v$  with  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$ ,  $p \in P$  and  $v$  a difference node of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$  where  $p' \in P$ , i.e.,  $v \in V_\perp(M(C[p]) \cap$

$M(C[p'])$ ). Since  $\text{pref}(M, C) \sqsubseteq M(C[p]) \sqcap M(C[p'])$ , there is an ancestor  $\hat{v}$  of  $v$  such that  $\hat{v} \in V_\perp(\text{pref}(M, C))$ . Thus,  $M(C[p])/\hat{v}$  is a component of a difference tuple, and  $M(C[p])/v$  is one of its subtrees.

( $\geq$ ) We show that every component of a difference tuple is a difference tree. Consider  $M(C[p])/v$  with  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$ ,  $p \in P$  and  $v \in V_\perp(\text{pref}(M, C))$ . By Lemma 1, each proper ancestor of  $v$  has the same label in all  $M(C[\bar{p}])$ ,  $\bar{p} \in P$ , but  $v$  does not have the same label in all  $M(C[\bar{p}])$ . Thus, there exists  $p' \in P$  such that  $v$  has different labels in  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$ . Then  $v$  is a difference node of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$  by Lemma 6.  $\square$

*Example 18.* For the dtla  $M$  of Example 7, with the order  $P = \{p_a, p_b\}$ , we obtain that  $\text{diftup}(M) = \{(a, \sigma^n(q, p_b)) \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$ .

For the dtla  $M$  of Example 8, also with the order  $P = \{p_a, p_b\}$ , we obtain that  $\text{diftup}(M)$  consists of all pairs  $(\langle q_0, p_a \rangle, b)$ ,  $(\gamma_1(\langle q_1, p_a \rangle), b)$ ,  $(\gamma_1(\gamma_2(\langle q_1, p_a \rangle)), b)$ , and  $(\gamma_1(\gamma_2(\gamma_3(a))), b)$  for  $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \gamma_3 \in \{\sigma, \tau\}$ .

For the dtla  $M$  of Example 14 (which is the la-uniform version of the dtla of Example 9) it is not difficult to see that  $\text{diff}(M) = \{a, b\} \cup \{\langle q_{yz}, p_{yz} \rangle \mid y, z \in \{a, b\}\}$ , and that the set  $\text{diftup}(M)$  consists of the three 4-tuples  $(a, a, b, b)$ ,  $(a, b, a, b)$ , and  $(\langle q_{aa}, p_{aa} \rangle, \langle q_{ab}, p_{ab} \rangle, \langle q_{ba}, p_{ba} \rangle, \langle q_{bb}, p_{bb} \rangle)$ , where we have taken the order  $P = \{p_{aa}, p_{ab}, p_{ba}, p_{bb}\}$ .

For the dtla  $M$  of Example 10,  $\text{diftup}(M) = \{(e, o), (o, e)\}$ .

In the above examples, the components of the difference tuples are exactly the difference trees. As another example, let  $\Sigma = \Delta = \{\sigma^{(1)}, a^{(0)}, b^{(0)}, c^{(0)}\}$  and consider the dtla  $M$  with  $P = \{p_a, p_b, p_c\}$ ,  $\delta(y) = p_y$ , and  $\delta(\sigma, p_y) = p_y$  for  $y \in \{a, b, c\}$ ,  $Q = \emptyset$ ,  $A(p_a) = a$ ,  $A(p_b) = \sigma(b)$ , and  $A(p_c) = \sigma(\sigma(c))$ . Thus, for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $M$  translates  $\sigma^n a$  into  $a$ ,  $\sigma^n b$  into  $\sigma b$ , and  $\sigma^n c$  into  $\sigma\sigma c$ . Since  $a \sqcap \sigma b = \perp$ ,  $a \sqcap \sigma\sigma c = \perp$ , and  $\sigma b \sqcap \sigma\sigma c = \sigma\perp$ , we obtain that  $\text{diff}(M) = \{a, \sigma b, \sigma\sigma c, b, \sigma c\}$ . Since  $a \sqcap \sigma b \sqcap \sigma\sigma c = \perp$ , we obtain that  $\text{diftup}(M) = \{(a, \sigma b, \sigma\sigma c)\}$ . Thus,  $b$  and  $\sigma c$  are difference trees that are not components of a difference tuple (but are subtrees of such components). Note that there is a dtop with one state that is equivalent to  $M$ .  $\square$

In the next lemmas  $N$  is a total dtop, equivalent to  $M$ . We assume that the unique look-ahead state of  $N$  is  $\perp$ . So,  $N^\circ$  translates input trees in  $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma(\{\perp\})$ , in particular  $\Sigma$ -contexts, into output trees in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_N \times \{\perp\})$ ; for a  $\Sigma$ -context  $C$  we of course write  $C$  instead of  $C[\perp]$ . The unique axiom  $A_N(\perp)$  is denoted by  $A_N$ , a rule  $q(a(x_1 : \perp, \dots, x_k : \perp)) \rightarrow \zeta$  is written  $q(a(x_1, \dots, x_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  and  $\zeta$  is denoted  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)$ . For a tree  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_N \times \{\perp\})$  we define the pattern  $t\bar{\Phi} \in \mathcal{P}_\Delta$  by  $t\bar{\Phi} = t[\langle q, \perp \rangle \leftarrow \perp \mid q \in Q_N]$ ; similarly, for  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_N(X))$  we define  $t\bar{\Phi} = t[q(x_i) \leftarrow \perp \mid q \in Q_N, i \in \mathbb{N}]$ .

Let  $M$  be a canonical dtpla and  $N$  a dtop such that  $\llbracket M \rrbracket = \llbracket N \rrbracket$ . We first show that the translation of an input tree by  $M$  is always ahead of its translation by  $N$ , in a uniform way. An *aheadness mapping* from  $N$  to  $M$  is a function  $\varphi : Q_N \times P_M \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_M \times P_M)$  such that for every  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p \in P_M$ ,

$$M(C[p]) = N(C)[\langle q, \perp \rangle \leftarrow \varphi(q, p) \mid q \in Q_N]. \quad (2)$$

Note that  $\varphi(q, p)$  must be in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(\{\langle \bar{q}, p \rangle \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M, \rho_M(\bar{q}) = p\})$ . Intuitively,  $\varphi$  defines the exact amount in which  $M$  is ahead of  $N$ , which is independent of  $C$ .

**Lemma 19.** *Let  $M$  be a canonical dtpla and  $N$  a dtop such that  $\llbracket M \rrbracket = \llbracket N \rrbracket$ . Then there is a unique aheadness mapping from  $N$  to  $M$ .*

*Proof.* We first show that  $M$  is ahead of  $N$ , i.e., that all output symbols produced by  $N$  on a given input context are also produced by  $M$ . Let  $p \in P_M$  and let  $C$  be a  $\Sigma$ -context.

**Claim 1.**  $V_d(N(C)) \subseteq V_d(M(C[p]))$  for every  $d \in \Delta$ .  
Equivalently,  $N(C)\Phi \subseteq M(C[p])$ .

*Proof:* By induction on the length of the nodes of  $N(C)$ . Let  $v$  be a node of  $N(C)$  with label  $d \in \Delta$ . Since  $v$ 's proper ancestors are in  $V_\Delta(N(C))$  it follows by induction that  $v$  is a node of  $M(C[p])$ . Consider an arbitrary  $s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket_M$ . By Lemma 4,  $v$  has label  $d$  in  $N(C[s])$ . Since  $\llbracket M \rrbracket = \llbracket N \rrbracket$ ,  $M(C[s]) = N(C[s])$  and so  $v$  has label  $d$  in  $M(C[s])$ . Suppose that  $v$  does not have label  $d$  in  $M(C[p])$ . Then, again by Lemma 4,  $v$  must have some label  $\langle q, p \rangle$  in  $M(C[p])$  such that  $q_M(s)$  has root label  $d$ . Since this holds for every  $s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket_M$ , we obtain that  $\text{rlabs}_M(q) = \{d\}$  contradicting the fact that  $M$  is earliest. Note that, since  $M$  is la-uniform,  $\rho_M(q) = p$  by Lemma 12(3) and hence  $\llbracket p \rrbracket_M = \text{dom}(\llbracket q \rrbracket_M)$  by Lemma 12(1). This proves the claim.

Next we show that the amount in which  $M$  is ahead of  $N$ , is independent of  $C$ . Let  $C_1, C_2$  be  $\Sigma$ -contexts,  $v_1, v_2 \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  and  $q \in Q_N$ .

**Claim 2.** If  $N(C_1)/v_1 = N(C_2)/v_2 = \langle q, \perp \rangle$ ,  
then  $M(C_1[p])/v_1 = M(C_2[p])/v_2$ .

*Proof:* By Claim 1,  $v_i$  is a node of  $M(C_i[p])$ . Let  $t_i \in T_\Delta(Q_M \times \{p\})$  denote the tree  $M(C_i[p])/v_i$ . For every  $s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket_M$ ,  $N(C_1[s])/v_1 = N(C_2[s])/v_2 = q_N(s)$  by Lemma 4, and so  $M(C_1[s])/v_1 = M(C_2[s])/v_2$ . Hence, again by Lemma 4,  $t_1\psi_s = t_2\psi_s$  for all  $s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket_M$ , where  $\psi_s = [\langle q, p \rangle \leftarrow q_M(s) \mid q \in Q_M]$ . Suppose that  $t_1 \neq t_2$ . Then there is a leaf  $v$  of, e.g.,  $t_1$  with label  $\langle q_1, p \rangle$  such that  $v$  is a node of  $t_2$  with  $t_2/v \neq \langle q_1, p \rangle$ . If the root label of  $t_2/v$  is  $d \in \Delta$ , then  $q_{1M}(s)$  has root label  $d$  for all  $s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket_M$ , contradicting the fact that  $M$  is earliest. If  $t_2/v$  equals  $\langle q_2, p \rangle$  with  $q_1 \neq q_2$ , then  $q_{1M}(s) = q_{2M}(s)$  for all  $s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket_M$ . Since, as observed in the proof of Claim 1,  $\llbracket p \rrbracket_M$  is the domain of both  $\llbracket q_1 \rrbracket_M$  and  $\llbracket q_2 \rrbracket_M$  by Lemma 12, we obtain that  $\llbracket q_1 \rrbracket_M = \llbracket q_2 \rrbracket_M$ , contradicting the fact that  $M$  is canonical. This proves the claim.

An aheadness mapping from  $N$  to  $M$  can now be defined as follows. Let  $q \in Q_N$  and  $p \in P_M$ . By Lemma 5, there is a  $\Sigma$ -context  $C$  such that  $N(C)$  has a node  $v$  labeled  $\langle q, \perp \rangle$ . By Claim 1,  $v$  is a node of  $M(C[p])$  and we define  $\varphi(q, p) = M(C[p])/v$ . By Claim 2, the definition of  $\varphi$  does not depend on  $C$  and  $v$ . It follows from Claim 1 that if  $N(C) = t[\langle q_1, \perp \rangle, \dots, \langle q_r, \perp \rangle]$  with  $t \in \mathcal{P}_\Delta$  and  $r = |V_\perp(t)|$ , then  $M(C[p]) = t[M(C[p])/v_1, \dots, M(C[p])/v_r]$  where  $v_i$  is the  $i$ th occurrence of  $\perp$  in  $t$ , and hence  $M(C[p]) = t[\varphi(q_1, p), \dots, \varphi(q_r, p)]$ . Thus,  $\varphi$  satisfies Equation (2): the requirement for an aheadness mapping. Obviously, if  $\varphi'$  is an aheadness mapping from  $N$  to  $M$ , and  $C$  is a  $\Sigma$ -context such that  $N(C)$  has a node  $v$  labeled  $\langle q, \perp \rangle$ , then  $M(C[p])/v = \varphi'(q, p)$  for every  $p \in P_M$ , by Equation (2). Thus  $\varphi' = \varphi$ , which shows that  $\varphi$  is the unique aheadness mapping from  $N$  to  $M$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 20.** *Let  $M$  be a canonical dtpla and  $N$  a dtop such that  $\llbracket M \rrbracket = \llbracket N \rrbracket$ . Let  $\varphi$  be the aheadness mapping from  $N$  to  $M$ . For every  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  and  $q \in Q_N$ , if  $\delta_M(s) = p$ , then*

$$q_N(s) = \varphi(q, p)[\langle \bar{q}, p \rangle \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(s) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M].$$

*Proof.* By Lemma 5, there are  $C, v$  such that  $N(C)/v = \langle q, \perp \rangle$ . It follows from Equation (2) that  $M(C[p])/v = \varphi(q, p)$ . Since  $M$  and  $N$  are equivalent,  $N(C[s]) = M(C[s])$ . Applying Lemma 4 twice, we obtain  $q_N(s) = N(C[s])/v = M(C[s])/v = (M(C[p])/v)[\langle \bar{q}, p \rangle \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(s) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M]$ , which proves the equation.  $\square$

In the next lemma we prove our basic intuition that the output of  $N$  on input  $C$  is the largest common prefix of the outputs of  $M$  on all inputs  $C[p]$ ,  $p \in P$ , such that the difference tuples of  $M$  are stored in the states of  $N$ .

**Lemma 21.** *Let  $M$  be a canonical dtpla and  $N$  an earliest dtop such that  $\llbracket M \rrbracket = \llbracket N \rrbracket$ . Let  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and let  $\varphi$  be the aheadness mapping from  $N$  to  $M$ . Then*

- (1)  $N(C)\Phi = \text{pref}(M, C)$  and, for every  $v \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$ ,  $q \in Q_N$  and  $p \in P_M$ ,
- (2) if  $N(C)/v = \langle q, \perp \rangle$  then  $\varphi(q, p) = M(C[p])/v$ .

*Proof.* By the definition of aheadness mapping (Equation (2)),  $N(C)\Phi \sqsubseteq M(C[p])$  for every  $p \in P_M$  (cf. Claim 1 in the proof of Lemma 19), and so  $N(C)\Phi \sqsubseteq \text{pref}(M, C)$  by the definition of greatest lower bound. To show equality, we prove for every node  $v$  of  $N(C)\Phi$  with label  $\perp$  that  $v$  has label  $\perp$  in  $\text{pref}(M, C)$  too. Let  $N(C)/v = \langle q, \perp \rangle$  for  $q \in Q_N$ . Then, by Equation (2),  $M(C[p])/v = \varphi(q, p)$  for every  $p \in P_M$  (which proves statement (2) of this lemma). Suppose now that  $v$  has label  $d \in \Delta$  in  $\text{pref}(M, C)$ . Then  $v$  has label  $d$  in every  $M(C[p])$ , and so the root symbol of  $\varphi(q, p)$  is  $d$  for every  $p \in P_M$ . It then follows from Lemma 20 that  $q_N(s)$  has root label  $d$  for every  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , contradicting the fact that  $N$  is earliest. Hence  $v$  has label  $\perp$  in  $\text{pref}(M, C)$ .  $\square$

If a dtpla  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop, then it is equivalent to a canonical dtop by Theorem 15. By [8, Theorem 15], two canonical dtops are equivalent if and only if they are the same (modulo a renaming of their states). Thus, if a dtpla  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop, then it is equivalent to a *unique* canonical dtop  $\text{td}(M)$ . In the next three lemmas we give another proof of this, and we show that the dtop  $\text{td}(M)$  can be constructed from  $M$  and  $\text{diftup}(M)$ .

We start by showing that  $Q_{\text{td}(M)}$  can be identified with  $\text{diftup}(M)$ , assuming  $M$  to be canonical too.

**Lemma 22.** *Let  $M, N$  be equivalent canonical dtlas such that  $M$  is a dtpla and  $N$  is a dtop. Let  $\varphi : Q_N \times P_M \rightarrow T_\Delta(Q_M \times P_M)$  be the aheadness mapping from  $N$  to  $M$ , and let for  $q \in Q_N$*

$$\psi(q) = (\varphi(q, \hat{p}_1), \dots, \varphi(q, \hat{p}_n))$$

*where  $P_M = \{\hat{p}_1, \dots, \hat{p}_n\}$ . Then  $\psi$  is a bijection between  $Q_N$  and  $\text{diftup}(M)$ .*

*Proof.* The proof is in three parts.

- (i) For all  $q \in Q_N$ ,  $\psi(q) \in \text{diftup}(M)$ .

*Proof:* Let  $C, v$  be such that  $N(C)/v = \langle q, \perp \rangle$ , by Lemma 5. By Lemma 21,  $v \in V_\perp(\text{pref}(M, C))$  and  $M(C[\hat{p}_i])/v = \varphi(q, \hat{p}_i)$  for every  $i \in [n]$ . That shows that  $\psi(q) \in \text{diftup}(M)$ .

- (ii) For every  $\bar{t} \in \text{diftup}(M)$  there exists  $q \in Q_N$  such that  $\psi(q) = \bar{t}$ .



Proof: If  $(t_1, \dots, t_n) \in \text{diftup}(M)$  then there are  $C, v$  such that  $\text{pref}(M, C)/v = \perp$  and  $M(C[\hat{p}_i])/v = t_i$  for  $i \in [n]$ . By Lemma 21,  $N(C)/v = \langle q, \perp \rangle$  for some  $q \in Q_N$ , and  $M(C[\hat{p}_i])/v = \varphi(q, \hat{p}_i)$ . Thus,  $t_i = \varphi(q, \hat{p}_i)$  for  $i \in [n]$ .

(iii) If  $\psi(q_1) = \psi(q_2)$  then  $q_1 = q_2$ .

Proof: Let  $\psi(q_1) = \psi(q_2)$ . By Lemma 20,  $q_{1N}(s) = q_{2N}(s)$  for all  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ . In other words,  $\llbracket q_1 \rrbracket_N = \llbracket q_2 \rrbracket_N$  and hence  $q_1 = q_2$  because  $N$  is canonical.  $\square$

**Corollary 23.** *Let  $M$  be a total dtla. If  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop, then  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite.*

*Proof.* If  $M$  is a dtop, then  $\text{diff}(M) = \emptyset$ . Now assume that  $M$  is a dtpla. Let  $\text{can}(M)$  be a canonical dtpla equivalent to  $M$ . It exists by Lemma 13 and Theorem 15. If  $M$ , and hence  $\text{can}(M)$ , is equivalent to a (total) dtop, then  $\text{can}(M)$  is equivalent to a canonical dtop, by Theorem 15. By Lemmas 19 and 22,  $\text{diftup}(\text{can}(M))$  is finite, and so  $\text{diff}(\text{can}(M))$  is finite by Lemma 17. Hence  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite by Theorem 15, because  $\text{maxdiff}(M) \leq \text{maxdiff}(\text{can}(M)) + \text{sumfix}(M)$ .  $\square$

The reverse of this corollary does not hold, see Example 10.

For an la-uniform dtla  $M$  and a tree  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q(X))$  we define  $t\Omega \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q \times P)$  by  $t\Omega = t[q(x_i) \leftarrow \langle q, \rho(q) \rangle \mid q \in Q, i \in \mathbb{N}]$ . In particular, for a total dtop  $N$ ,  $t\Omega = t[q(x_i) \leftarrow \langle q, \perp \rangle \mid q \in Q_N, i \in \mathbb{N}]$ . Recall also the definition of the pattern  $t\Phi \in \mathcal{P}_\Delta$  for  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_N(X))$  or  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_N \times \{\perp\})$  after Example 18.

Next we show, for a canonical dtpla  $M$ , how to compute the axiom of  $\text{td}(M)$ , representing the states of  $\text{td}(M)$  by difference tuples.

**Lemma 24.** *Let  $M, N$  be equivalent canonical dtlas such that  $M$  is a dtpla and  $N$  is a dtop. Let  $\varphi$  be the aheadness mapping from  $N$  to  $M$ . Then*

- (1)  $A_N\Phi = \sqcap\{A_M(p)\Omega \mid p \in P_M\}$ , and for every  $v \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$ ,  $q \in Q_N$ , and  $p \in P_M$ ,
- (2) if  $A_N/v = q(x_0)$  then  $\varphi(q, p) = A_M(p)\Omega/v$ .

*Proof.* By the semantics of  $N^\circ$ ,  $N(\perp) = A_N\Omega$  and by the semantics of  $M^\circ$ ,  $M(p) = A_M(p)\Omega$  for every  $p \in P_M$ . Hence by Lemma 21(1), with  $C = \perp$ ,  $A_N\Phi = A_N\Omega\Phi = N(\perp)\Phi = \text{pref}(M, \perp) = \sqcap\{M(p) \mid p \in P_M\} = \sqcap\{A_M(p)\Omega \mid p \in P_M\}$ . If  $A_N/v = q(x_0)$  then  $N(\perp)/v = A_N\Omega/v = \langle q, \perp \rangle$  and so by Lemma 21(2), with  $C = \perp$ ,  $\varphi(q, p) = M(p)/v = A_M(p)\Omega/v$  for every  $p \in P_M$ .  $\square$

We note that it is easy to see that  $\sqcap\{A_M(p)\Omega \mid p \in P_M\} = \sqcap\{A_M(p) \mid p \in P_M\}$ , and hence  $A_N\Phi = \sqcap\{A_M(p) \mid p \in P_M\}$ .

Let  $M$  be an la-uniform dtla,  $Q_N$  be a finite set and  $\varphi : Q_N \times P_M \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_M \times P_M)$  be a mapping such that  $\varphi(q, p) \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta(\{\langle \bar{q}, p \rangle \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M, \rho_M(\bar{q}) = p\})$  for every  $q \in Q_N$  and  $p \in P_M$ . Then we define for every  $q \in Q_N$ ,  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ , and  $p_1, \dots, p_k \in P_M$ , the tree

$$\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k) = \varphi(q, p)[\langle \bar{q}, p \rangle \leftarrow \text{rhs}_M(\bar{q}, a, p_1, \dots, p_k) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M]$$

where  $p = \delta_M(a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$ . Note that by the above condition on  $\varphi(q, p)$ , the right-hand side of the equation is always defined and is a tree in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_M(X_k))$ ; moreover, if it has a subtree  $q'(x_i)$ , then  $\rho_M(q') = p_i$ .

Finally we show how to compute the rules of  $\text{td}(M)$ .

**Lemma 25.** *Let  $M, N$  be equivalent canonical dtlas such that  $M$  is a dtpla and  $N$  is a dtop. Let  $\varphi$  be the aheadness mapping from  $N$  to  $M$ .*

(1) *For every  $q \in Q_N$  and  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ ,*

$$\text{rhs}_N(q, a)\Phi = \sqcap \{ \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)\Omega \mid p_1, \dots, p_k \in P_M \}.$$

(2) *Let  $q \in Q_N$ ,  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ , and  $i \in [k]$ . For  $j \in [k]$ ,  $j \neq i$ , let  $s_j \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  and  $p_j = \delta_M(s_j)$ . Let  $\Psi_{iM} = [\bar{q}(x_j) \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(s_j) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M, j \in [k], j \neq i]\Omega$ .<sup>14</sup>*

*For every  $v \in V_\perp(\text{rhs}_N(q, a)\Phi)$ ,*

(a)  *$\text{rhs}_N(q, a)/v \in Q_N(\{x_i\})$  if and only if*

$$v \in V_\perp(\sqcap \{ \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_{i-1}, p, p_{i+1}, \dots, p_k)\Psi_{iM} \mid p \in P_M \}),$$

*and*

(b) *for every  $\bar{q} \in Q_N$  and  $p \in P_M$ , if  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)/v = \bar{q}(x_i)$ , then*

$$\varphi(\bar{q}, p) = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_{i-1}, p, p_{i+1}, \dots, p_k)\Psi_{iM}/v.$$

*Proof.* (1) We first show that  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)\Phi \sqsubseteq \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$  for all  $p_1, \dots, p_k \in P_M$ . Consider arbitrary trees  $s_1, \dots, s_k \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  with  $s_i \in \llbracket p_i \rrbracket_M$  for  $i \in [k]$ , and let  $s = a(s_1, \dots, s_k)$ . By Lemma 2(4),

$$q_N(s) = \text{rhs}_N(q, a)\Psi_N$$

where  $\Psi_N = [\bar{q}(x_i) \leftarrow \bar{q}_N(s_i) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_N, i \in [k]]$ . On the other hand, by Lemma 20 and Lemma 2(4),

$$q_N(s) = \varphi(q, p)[\langle \bar{q}, p \rangle \leftarrow \text{rhs}_M(\bar{q}, a, p_1, \dots, p_k) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M]\Psi_M$$

where  $p = \delta_M(a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$  and  $\Psi_M = [\bar{q}(x_i) \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(s_i) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M, i \in [k]]$ . Thus

$$\text{rhs}_N(q, a)\Psi_N = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)\Psi_M. \quad (3)$$

We have to prove that every node of  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)$  with label  $d \in \Delta$  is also a node of  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$ , with the same label. We prove this by induction on the length of the nodes of  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)$ , similar to the proof of Claim 1 of Lemma 19. Let  $v$  be a node of  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)$  with label  $d \in \Delta$ . By induction,  $v$  is a node of  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$ . Now suppose that  $v$  does not have label  $d$  in  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$ . Then Equation (3) implies that  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)/v = \bar{q}(x_i)$  and that  $\bar{q}_M(s_i)$  has root label  $d$ . Since that holds for arbitrary  $s_i \in \llbracket p_i \rrbracket_M$ , it contradicts the fact that  $M$  is earliest. Note that since  $M$  is la-uniform,  $\llbracket p_i \rrbracket_M$  is the domain of  $\llbracket \bar{q} \rrbracket_M$ .

Now let  $\Pi = \{ \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)\Omega \mid p_1, \dots, p_k \in P_M \}$ . By the above,  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)\Phi \sqsubseteq \sqcap \Pi$ . It remains to prove for every node  $v$  of  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)\Phi$  with label  $\perp$  that  $v$  has label  $\perp$  in  $\sqcap \Pi$  too. Let  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)/v = \bar{q}(x_i)$ . Assume now that  $v$  has label  $d \in \Delta$  in  $\sqcap \Pi$ . Then  $v$  has label  $d$  in every tree  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$ . Equation (3)

<sup>14</sup> Note that  $\Psi_{iM}$  depends on the trees  $s_j$ . Note also that, through  $\Omega$ , it replaces every  $\bar{q}(x_i)$  by  $\langle \bar{q}, \rho(\bar{q}) \rangle$ .

then implies that  $\bar{q}_N(s_i)$  has root label  $d$  for every  $s_i \in \llbracket p_i \rrbracket_M$ . Since this holds for every  $p_i \in P_M$ ,  $\bar{q}_N(s)$  has root label  $d$  for every  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , which contradicts the fact that  $N$  is earliest.

(2) Let the substitution  $\Psi_{iN}$  be defined similar to  $\Psi_{iM}$ , i.e.,  $\Psi_{iN} = [\bar{q}(x_j) \leftarrow \bar{q}_N(s_j) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_N, j \in [k], j \neq i] \Omega$ . Let  $C, u$  be such that  $N(C)/u = \langle q, \perp \rangle$ , by Lemma 5, and consider the context  $C_i = C[a(s_1, \dots, s_{i-1}, \perp, s_{i+1}, \dots, s_k)]$ . By Lemma 4 and Lemma 2(4),  $N(C_i) = N(C)[\langle \bar{q}, \perp \rangle \leftarrow \text{rhs}_N(\bar{q}, a) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_N] \Psi_{iN}$ . Hence

$$N(C_i)/u = \text{rhs}_N(q, a) \Psi_{iN}. \quad (4)$$

Note that for every  $v \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$ ,  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)/v \in Q_N(\{x_i\})$  if and only if  $v$  has label  $\perp$  in  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a) \Psi_{iN} \Phi$ . By Lemma 21(1),  $N(C_i) \Phi = \text{pref}(M, C_i)$ . Consequently,  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)/v \in Q_N(\{x_i\})$  if and only if  $v \in V_\perp(\text{pref}(M, C_i)/u)$ . It should be clear that  $\text{pref}(M, C_i)/u = \sqcap \{M(C_i[p])/u \mid p \in P_M\}$ . By Lemma 4 and Lemma 2(4),  $M(C_i[p])$  equals  $M(C[p'])[\langle \bar{q}, p' \rangle \leftarrow \text{rhs}_M(\bar{q}, a, p_1, \dots, p_{i-1}, p, p_{i+1}, \dots, p_k) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M] \Psi_{iM}$  for every  $p \in P_M$ , where  $p' = \delta_M(a, p_1, \dots, p_{i-1}, p, p_{i+1}, \dots, p_k)$ . Hence, since  $M(C[p'])/u = \varphi(q, p')$  by Lemma 21(2), we obtain for every  $p \in P_M$  that

$$M(C_i[p])/u = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_{i-1}, p, p_{i+1}, \dots, p_k) \Psi_{iM}, \quad (5)$$

which shows that  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)/v \in Q_N(\{x_i\})$  if and only if  $v$  has label  $\perp$  in the largest common prefix of all  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_{i-1}, p, p_{i+1}, \dots, p_k) \Psi_{iM}$  with  $p \in P_M$ .

If  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)/v = \bar{q}(x_i)$  and  $p \in P_M$ , then  $N(C_i)/uv = \langle \bar{q}, \perp \rangle$  by Equation (4), and so  $\varphi(\bar{q}, p) = M(C_i[p])/uv$  by Lemma 21(2). Then Equation (5) implies the required result.  $\square$

Note that if  $a \in \Sigma^{(0)}$ , then (1) of this lemma means that  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a) = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a)$ . Note also that if  $a \in \Sigma^{(1)}$ , then no  $s_j$  need to be chosen in (2) and so  $\Psi_{1M} = \Omega$ ; moreover, (2)(a) need not be checked because it is immediate from (1).

The last three lemmas show that every dtpla  $M$  that is equivalent to a dtop, is equivalent to a unique canonical dtop  $\text{td}(M)$ , modulo a renaming of states. Based on these same lemmas, we can now construct  $\text{td}(M)$  from any given canonical dtpla  $M$  for which  $\text{diftup}(M)$  is a given finite set. The construction returns the answer ‘no’ if  $M$  is not equivalent to any dtop. We construct the total dtop  $N = \text{td}(M)$ , if it exists, by taking  $Q_N = \text{diftup}(M)$ , by defining the mapping  $\varphi : Q_N \times P_M \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_M \times P_M)$  as  $\varphi((t_1, \dots, t_n), \hat{p}_i) = t_i$  for  $i \in [n]$  (in accordance with Lemma 22), and by constructing the axiom and rules of  $N$  according to Lemmas 24 and 25, respectively (i.e., by viewing the numbered statements of these lemmas as definitions). In (2) of Lemma 25 we choose  $s_j$  arbitrarily but fixed (e.g.,  $s_j = a$  for all  $j$ , with  $a \in \Sigma^{(0)}$ ). It may be that the construction of an axiom or a rule fails when a possible state occurring in it (which is a tuple in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_M \times P_M)^n$ ) is not a difference tuple of  $M$ . Then the construction returns the answer ‘no’. Also, the construction of a rule can fail when a node  $v \in V_\perp(\text{rhs}_N(q, a) \Phi)$  is an element of  $V_\perp(\sqcap \{\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_{i-1}, p, p_{i+1}, \dots, p_k) \Psi_{iM} \mid p \in P_M\})$  for several  $i$  or for no  $i$ , see (2)(a) of Lemma 25. Again, the construction then returns the answer ‘no’. If the construction of the dtop  $N$  succeeds, then it remains to test whether  $M$  and  $N$  are equivalent (because, by Lemmas 22, 24 and 25, if  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop then it is equivalent to  $N$ ). If they are not equivalent then the answer is ‘no’. If they

are equivalent then the construction returns the dtop  $N = \text{td}(M)$ . Note that equivalence of dtlas is decidable by [11] (see also [8, Corollary 19]).

Unfortunately, we do not know whether it is decidable if  $\text{diftup}(M)$  is finite, and whether it can be computed when it is finite. In the next theorem we show that, to determine whether a total dtla  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop, it suffices to have an upper bound for  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$ . This is our first main result.

Recall from Section 4 that a number  $h(M) \in \mathbb{N}$  is a *difference bound* for  $M$  if the following holds: if  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite, then  $\text{maxdiff}(M) \leq h(M)$ .

**Theorem 26.** *It is decidable for a given total dtla  $M$  and a given difference bound for  $M$  whether there exists a dtop  $N$  such that  $\llbracket M \rrbracket = \llbracket N \rrbracket$ , and if so, such a dtop  $N$  can be constructed.*

*Proof.* Let  $M$  be a total dtla and let  $h(M)$  be a difference bound for  $M$ . We may, of course, assume that  $M$  is a dtpla. By Lemma 13, we may assume that  $M$  is la-uniform. Moreover, by Theorem 15 we may assume that  $M$  is canonical. In fact, if  $\text{can}(M)$  is the canonical dtpla equivalent to  $M$  as constructed in the proof of that theorem, then  $h(M) + \text{sumfix}(M)$  is a (computable) difference bound for  $\text{can}(M)$ , as shown after Theorem 15.

So, let  $M$  be a canonical dtpla and let  $h(M)$  be a difference bound for  $M$ . By Lemma 17, this means that if  $\text{diftup}(M)$  is finite, then the height of the components of the difference tuples of  $M$  is at most  $h(M)$ . We now decide whether  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop by constructing  $\text{td}(M)$  as described before this theorem. However, since  $\text{diftup}(M)$  is not given, we construct  $N = \text{td}(M)$  incrementally, using a variable  $Q_N$  to accumulate its states (which are all assumed to be reachable). In accordance with Lemma 22 we take  $Q_N \subseteq \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_M \times P_M)^n$  and  $\varphi((t_1, \dots, t_n), \hat{p}_i) = t_i$  for  $i \in [n]$ . We first construct the axiom  $A_N$  according to Lemma 24 and initialize the set  $Q_N$  with the states, i.e., the tuples in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_M \times P_M)^n$ , that occur in that axiom. If the height of one of the components of one of those tuples is larger than  $h(M)$ , then that tuple is not a difference tuple of  $M$ , and we stop the construction with answer ‘no’, indicating that  $M$  is not equivalent to any dtop. Then, repeatedly, for every  $q \in Q_N$  and  $a \in \Sigma$  we construct  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)$  according to Lemma 25, and we add to  $Q_N$  the states that occur in that right-hand side. If the construction of  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)$  fails or if the height of one of the components of its states is larger than  $h(M)$ , then the answer is ‘no’. If the construction of the dtop  $N$  succeeds, then it remains to test whether  $M$  and  $N$  are equivalent, as described before this theorem.

We finally observe that, due to Condition (2) of Lemma 24 and Condition (2)(b) of Lemma 25, for every state  $q \in Q_N$  and every  $p \in P_M$  the tree  $\varphi(q, p)$  is in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(\{\langle \bar{q}, p \rangle \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M, \rho_M(\bar{q}) = p\})$ , and hence  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$  is always defined and in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_M(X_k))$ .  $\square$

Several examples of the algorithm in the proof of Theorem 26 will be given in Section 6.2. The algorithm is useful for the designer of a dtla, cf. Examples 7–10 in Section 4. If you have designed a dtla  $M$  to satisfy a specification of its translation  $\llbracket M \rrbracket$ , then you usually also know how to specify the output  $M(C[p])$ , for every context  $C$  and every look-ahead state  $p$ . From this it is probably straightforward for you to obtain a specification of  $\text{diff}(M)$ . If  $\text{diff}(M)$  is infinite (which you probably also can

see), then  $M$  is not equivalent to a dtop by Corollary 23. If it is finite, then you can determine  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$  (or an upper bound for it), and hence you have determined a difference bound for  $M$ . So now you can use the algorithm of Theorem 26 to find out whether  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop, and if so, to construct such a dtop. On the other hand, if you are *not* able to determine a difference bound for  $M$ , then you can still use the algorithm of Theorem 26, without the tests on the height of the components of the states of  $N$ . If  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop, then the algorithm will construct such a dtop; otherwise, the algorithm may not halt (as will be shown in Example 30).<sup>15</sup>

From Theorem 26 we immediately obtain the following result.

**Corollary 27.** *Let  $\mathcal{U}$  be a class of total dtlas with the following property.*

(H) *There is a computable mapping  $h : \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that, for every  $M \in \mathcal{U}$ ,  $h(M)$  is a difference bound for  $M$ .*

*Then it is decidable for a given dtla  $M \in \mathcal{U}$  whether there exists a dtop  $N$  such that  $\llbracket M \rrbracket = \llbracket N \rrbracket$ , and if so, such a dtop  $N$  can be constructed.*

*Proof.* For a dtla  $M$  in  $\mathcal{U}$ , compute the difference bound  $h(M)$  and run the algorithm of Theorem 26.  $\square$

Let  $\mathcal{U}$  be the class of total ultralinear b-erasing dtlas. Our goal in Sections 7–9 is to prove that  $\mathcal{U}$  has Property (H), i.e., to compute a difference bound for the dtlas in the class  $\mathcal{U}$ .

## 6.1 Avoiding the final equivalence test

This subsection can be skipped by the reader who is satisfied with the algorithm in the proof of Theorem 26. We will show that the equivalence test of  $M$  and  $N$  at the end of the algorithm can be realized by a simple direct test. This possibility is based on the following lemma.

**Lemma 28.** *Let  $M$  be a canonical dptla and let  $N$  be a total dtop such that  $Q_N \subseteq \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_M \times P_M)^n$ . Let  $\varphi : Q_N \times P_M \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_M \times P_M)$  be such that  $\varphi((t_1, \dots, t_n), \hat{p}_i) = t_i$  for  $i \in [n]$ . If  $N$  satisfies Conditions (1) and (2) of Lemma 24 and Conditions (1) and (2)(b) of Lemma 25,<sup>16</sup> then  $N$  is equivalent to  $M$ .*

*Proof.* We first show, by structural induction on  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , that if  $\delta_M(s) = p$ , then  $q_N(s) = \varphi(q, p)[\langle \bar{q}, p \rangle \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(s) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M]$  for all  $q \in Q_N$ , cf. Lemma 20. Let  $s = a(s_1, \dots, s_k)$  with  $\delta_M(s_i) = p_i$  for  $i \in [k]$  and  $\delta_M(a, p_1, \dots, p_k) = p$ . From Lemma 2(4) we obtain that  $q_N(s) = \text{rhs}_N(q, a)[\bar{q}(x_i) \leftarrow \bar{q}_N(s_i) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_N, i \in [k]]$ .

<sup>15</sup> The existence of such an algorithm is obvious from the fact that the equivalence of dtlas is decidable: one can just enumerate all dtops  $N$  and test the equivalence of  $M$  and  $N$ . Obviously, our algorithm is more efficient.

<sup>16</sup> To be precise,  $N$  should satisfy Condition (2)(b) of Lemma 25 for all possible choices of the trees  $s_j \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ . Note also that, since all states of  $N$  are reachable, the tree  $\varphi(q, p)$  is in  $\mathcal{T}_\Delta(\{\langle \bar{q}, p \rangle \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M, \rho_M(\bar{q}) = p\})$  for every state  $q \in Q_N$  and every  $p \in P_M$ , as observed at the end of the proof of Theorem 26.

By induction,  $\bar{q}_N(s_i) = \varphi(\bar{q}, p_i)[\langle \bar{q}, p_i \rangle \leftarrow \tilde{q}_M(s_i) \mid \tilde{q} \in Q_M]$ . If  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)/v = \bar{q}(x_i)$ , then we have  $\varphi(\bar{q}, p_i) = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)\Psi_{iM}/v$  by Condition (2)(b) of Lemma 25, and consequently  $\bar{q}_N(s_i) = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)\Psi_M/v$ , where  $\Psi_M = [\tilde{q}(x_j) \leftarrow \tilde{q}_M(s_j) \mid \tilde{q} \in Q_M, j \in [k]]$ . Hence  $q_N(s) = t\Psi_M$  with

$$t = \text{rhs}_N(q, a)\Phi[\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)/v_1, \dots, \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)/v_r]$$

where  $v_1, \dots, v_r$  are the occurrences of  $\perp$  in  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)\Phi$ , from left to right. By Condition (1) of Lemma 25,  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)\Phi \sqsubseteq \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$  from which it follows that  $t = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)$ . So,  $q_N(s) = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)\Psi_M = \varphi(q, p)[\langle \bar{q}, p \rangle \leftarrow \text{rhs}_M(\bar{q}, a, p_1, \dots, p_k) \mid \tilde{q} \in Q_M]\Psi_M = \varphi(q, p)[\langle \bar{q}, p \rangle \leftarrow \tilde{q}_M(s) \mid \tilde{q} \in Q_M]$  where the last equality is by Lemma 2(4).

We now show with a similar proof that  $N(s) = M(s)$  for all  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , i.e., that  $N$  is equivalent to  $M$ . By Lemma 2(3),  $N(s) = A_N[q(x_0) \leftarrow q_N(s) \mid q \in Q_N]$  and  $M(s) = A_M(p)[\bar{q}(x_0) \leftarrow \tilde{q}_M(s) \mid \tilde{q} \in Q_M]$  where  $p = \delta_M(s)$ . By the above,  $q_N(s) = \varphi(q, p)[\langle \bar{q}, p \rangle \leftarrow \tilde{q}_M(s) \mid \tilde{q} \in Q_M]$ . If  $A_N/v = q(x_0)$  then, by Condition (2) of Lemma 24,  $\varphi(q, p) = A_M(p)\Omega/v$  and consequently  $q_N(s) = A_M(p)[\bar{q}(x_0) \leftarrow \tilde{q}_M(s) \mid \tilde{q} \in Q_M]/v$ . Hence  $N(s) = t[\bar{q}(x_0) \leftarrow \tilde{q}_M(s) \mid \tilde{q} \in Q_M]$  with  $t = A_N\Phi[A_M(p)/v_1, \dots, A_M(p)/v_r]$  where  $v_1, \dots, v_r$  are the occurrences of  $\perp$  in  $A_N\Phi$ , from left to right. By Condition (1) of Lemma 24,  $A_N\Phi \sqsubseteq A_M(p)$  and so  $t = A_M(p)$  and  $N(s) = A_M(p)[\bar{q}(x_0) \leftarrow \tilde{q}_M(s) \mid \tilde{q} \in Q_M] = M(s)$ .  $\square$

By this lemma, it suffices to guarantee that the constructed dtop  $N$  satisfies (2)(b) of Lemma 25 for all possible choices of  $s_j$  (rather than some fixed choice). To do this we use the following property of the canonical dtop  $\text{td}(M)$ .

**Lemma 29.** *Let  $M, N$  be equivalent canonical dtlas such that  $M$  is a dtpla and  $N$  is a dtop, and let  $\varphi$  be the aheadness mapping from  $N$  to  $M$ . Then  $N$  has the following property.*

- (A) *For every  $q, \bar{q} \in Q_N$ ,  $a \in \Sigma_k$ ,  $i \in [k]$ , and  $v \in V_\perp(\text{rhs}_N(q, a)\Phi)$ ,  
if  $\text{rhs}_N(q, a)/v = \bar{q}(x_i)$  then, for all  $p_1, \dots, p_k \in P_M$ ,  
(1)  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)/v \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta(Q_M(\{x_i\}))$  and  
(2)  $\varphi(\bar{q}, p_i) = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)\Omega/v$ .*

*Proof.* (1) We choose trees  $s_j \in \llbracket p_j \rrbracket_M$  for  $j \in [k]$ ,  $j \neq i$ . By (2)(b) of Lemma 25,  $\varphi(\bar{q}, p_i) = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)\Psi_{iM}/v$ . Suppose that there exists  $w \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  such that  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)/vw = \bar{q}(x_j)$  with  $j \neq i$ . Let  $s'_j \in \llbracket p_j \rrbracket_M$  be such that  $\bar{q}_M(s'_j) \neq \bar{q}_M(s_j)$ ; it exists because  $M$  is earliest (and so  $\bar{q}_M(s'_j)$  and  $\bar{q}_M(s_j)$  can even have different root symbols). Then, again by (2)(b) of Lemma 25,  $\varphi(\bar{q}, p_i) = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)\Psi'_{iM}/v$  where  $\Psi'_{iM}$  is obtained from  $\Psi_{iM}$  by changing  $s_j$  into  $s'_j$ . But the trees  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)\Psi_{iM}/v$  and  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)\Psi'_{iM}/v$  are different: their subtrees at node  $w$  are  $\bar{q}_M(s_j)$  and  $\bar{q}_M(s'_j)$ , respectively. That is a contradiction.

(2) follows immediately from (1) and from (2)(b) of Lemma 25.  $\square$

We now change the algorithm that constructs  $N = \text{td}(M)$ , as described before Theorem 26 and in its proof, by replacing the equivalence test of  $N$  with  $M$  (at the

end of the algorithm) by the test that  $N$  satisfies Property (A) of Lemma 29. If that test is negative, then the construction returns the answer ‘no’. If it is positive, then the construction returns the dtop  $N$ . In fact, in that case  $N$  is equivalent to  $M$  by Lemma 28 because Property (A) obviously implies (2)(b) of Lemma 25 for all choices of  $s_j$ .

Let us finally note that (1) of Property (A) cannot replace (2)(a) of Lemma 25 in the construction of  $N$ , because it is possible that  $\text{rhs}_{M,\varphi}(q, a, p_1, \dots, p_k)/v \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta$  for all  $p_1, \dots, p_k \in P_M$ .

## 6.2 Examples

In this subsection we give examples of the algorithm in the proof of Theorem 26, first several examples in which the algorithm returns the answer ‘no’, and at the end an example in which the algorithm successfully returns a dtop equivalent to the given dtla.

One might wonder whether the tests on height in the algorithm in the proof of Theorem 26 is necessary, i.e., whether a difference bound for  $M$  is needed at all. In the next example we show that, without the tests on height, the algorithm may not halt. In fact, in such a case it can be viewed as computing an *infinite* dtop equivalent to  $M$ .

*Example 30.* Consider the dtla  $M$  of Example 7 with  $M(\sigma^n a) = a$  and  $M(\sigma^n b) = \sigma^n b$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . It has  $P_M = \{p_a, p_b\}$  with  $\delta(a) = p_a$ ,  $\delta(b) = p_b$ ,  $\delta(\sigma, p_a) = p_a$ , and  $\delta(\sigma, p_b) = p_b$ . It has  $Q_M = \{q\}$ , its two axioms are  $A_M(p_a) = a$  and  $A_M(p_b) = q(x_0)$ , and its rules are  $q(\sigma(x_1 : p_b)) \rightarrow \sigma(q(x_1))$  and  $q(b) \rightarrow b$ . In Example 18 we have seen that  $\text{diftup}(M) = \{(a, \sigma^n \langle q, p_b \rangle) \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$ . It is easy to see that  $M$  is canonical.

We now apply to  $M$  the construction of  $N$  in the proof of Theorem 26, without the tests on height. By Lemma 24,  $A_N \Phi = a \sqcap \langle q, p_b \rangle = \perp$  and so  $A_N = q_0(x_0)$  with  $\varphi(q_0, p_a) = a$  and  $\varphi(q_0, p_b) = \langle q, p_b \rangle$ , i.e.,  $q_0 = (a, \langle q, p_b \rangle)$ . Assume now that the algorithm has constructed the state  $q_n$  with  $\varphi(q_n, p_a) = a$  and  $\varphi(q_n, p_b) = \sigma^n \langle q, p_b \rangle$ , i.e.,  $q_n$  is the difference tuple  $(a, \sigma^n \langle q, p_b \rangle)$  of  $M$ . By (1) of Lemma 25,  $\text{rhs}_N(q_n, b) = \text{rhs}_{M,\varphi}(q_n, b) = \varphi(q_n, p_b)[\langle \bar{q}, p_b \rangle \leftarrow \text{rhs}_M(\bar{q}, b) \mid \bar{q} \in Q_M] = \varphi(q_n, p_b)[\langle q, p_b \rangle \leftarrow b] = \sigma^n b$ . Thus,  $N$  has the rule  $q_n(b) \rightarrow \sigma^n b$ . Similarly,  $\text{rhs}_N(q_n, a) = \text{rhs}_{M,\varphi}(q_n, a) = \varphi(q_n, p_a) = a$  and so  $N$  has the rule  $q_n(a) \rightarrow a$ . Next, we compute  $\text{rhs}_N(q_n, \sigma)$ . To do that we need  $\text{rhs}_{M,\varphi}(q_n, \sigma, p)$  for every  $p \in P_M$ . For  $p = p_b$  we have  $\text{rhs}_{M,\varphi}(q_n, \sigma, p_b) = \varphi(q_n, p_b)[\langle q, p_b \rangle \leftarrow \text{rhs}_M(q, \sigma, p_b)] = \sigma^n \sigma q(x_1) = \sigma^{n+1} q(x_1)$ , and for  $p = p_a$  we have  $\text{rhs}_{M,\varphi}(q_n, \sigma, p_a) = \varphi(q_n, p_a) = a$ . Thus, by (1) of Lemma 25,  $\text{rhs}_N(q_n, \sigma) \Phi = a \sqcap \sigma^{n+1} \langle q, p_b \rangle = \perp$ . Hence,  $\text{rhs}_N(q_n, \sigma) = q(x_1)$  for some state  $q$  (because  $\sigma \in \Sigma_1$ , see the remark after Lemma 25). By (2)(b) of Lemma 25 (and because  $\Psi_{1M} = \Omega$ ),  $\varphi(q, p_y) = \text{rhs}_{M,\varphi}(q_n, \sigma, p_y) \Omega$  for  $y = a, b$ , and so  $\varphi(q, p_a) = a$  and  $\varphi(q, p_b) = \sigma^{n+1} \langle q, p_b \rangle$ . In other words,  $q = q_{n+1}$  and  $N$  has the rule  $q_n(\sigma(x_1)) \rightarrow q_{n+1}(x_1)$ .

This shows that the construction does not halt. It can be viewed as constructing the *infinite* dtop  $N$  with  $Q_N = \{q_n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\} = \text{diftup}(M)$ ,  $A_N = q_0(x_0)$  and rules  $q_n(a) \rightarrow a$ ,  $q_n(b) \rightarrow \sigma^n b$  and  $q_n(\sigma(x_1)) \rightarrow q_{n+1}(x_1)$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Clearly, this infinite dtop  $N$  is equivalent to  $M$ .

The dtla  $M$  is ultralinear and b-erasing (in fact, linear and nonerasing). We will see in the proof of Theorem 66 that it has difference bound  $h(M) = 1 + 4 \cdot \max\text{rhs}(M) \cdot (|Q| + 2)^2 \cdot |P|^2 = 1 + 4 \cdot 2 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 2^2 = 289$ . So, with this difference bound given,

the construction in the proof of Theorem 26 (with the tests on height) will halt when constructing  $q_{290}$ .  $\square$

In the next example we show that it is necessary to test the equivalence of  $N$  and  $M$  at the end of the algorithm in the proof of Theorem 26, or to test that  $N$  has Property (A) of Lemma 29.

*Example 31.* Let  $\Sigma = \{\sigma^{(2)}, a^{(0)}\}$  and  $\Delta = \{\sigma^{(1)}, a^{(1)}, e^{(0)}\}$ , and consider the following canonical dtla  $M$  that translates every tree  $\sigma(s_1, \sigma(s_2, \dots, \sigma(s_n, a) \dots))$  into the tree  $r_1 r_2 \dots r_n e$ , where  $r_i \in \{a, \sigma\}$  is the root symbol of  $s_i$  for  $i \in [n]$ . Its look-ahead automaton has two states  $p_a$  and  $p_\sigma$  with  $\delta(a) = p_a$  and  $\delta(\sigma, p_y, p_z) = p_\sigma$  for all  $y, z \in \{a, \sigma\}$ . It has one state  $q$  with  $\rho(q) = p_\sigma$ , its two axioms are  $A_M(p_a) = e$  and  $A_M(p_\sigma) = q(x_0)$ , and its four rules are

$$\begin{aligned} q(\sigma(x_1 : p_a, x_2 : p_\sigma) \rightarrow a(q(x_2))), & \quad q(\sigma(x_1 : p_\sigma, x_2 : p_\sigma) \rightarrow \sigma(q(x_2))), \\ q(\sigma(x_1 : p_a, x_2 : p_a) \rightarrow a(e)), & \quad q(\sigma(x_1 : p_\sigma, x_2 : p_a) \rightarrow \sigma(e)). \end{aligned}$$

We construct  $N$  as in the proof of Theorem 26 (assuming a large difference bound). By Lemma 24,  $A_N = q_0(x_0)$  with  $q_0 = (e, \langle q, p_\sigma \rangle)$  where  $P_M = \{p_a, p_\sigma\}$ . By (1) of Lemma 25,  $\text{rhs}_N(q_0, a) = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q_0, a) = e$  and so  $N$  has the rule  $q_0(a) \rightarrow e$ . To compute  $\text{rhs}_N(q_0, \sigma)$ , we observe that for  $y, z \in \{a, \sigma\}$ , we have  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q_0, \sigma, p_y, p_z) = \text{rhs}_M(q, \sigma, p_y, p_z)$ . Hence  $\text{rhs}_N(q_0, \sigma)\Phi = \perp$ , and so  $N$  may have a rule of the form  $q_0(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow q_1(x_i)$ . To determine  $i$  and  $q_1$ , we choose  $s_2 = a$  (for  $i = 1$ ) and  $s_1 = a$  (for  $i = 2$ ) in (2) of Lemma 25. By (2)(a) of Lemma 25,

$$i = 1 \text{ if and only if } \varepsilon \in V_\perp(\text{rhs}_M(q, \sigma, p_a, p_a)\Psi_{1M} \sqcap \text{rhs}_M(q, \sigma, p_\sigma, p_a)\Psi_{1M})$$

if and only if  $\varepsilon \in V_\perp(a(e) \sqcap \sigma(e)) = V_\perp(\perp)$ , which is true, and

$$i = 2 \text{ if and only if } \varepsilon \in V_\perp(\text{rhs}_M(q, \sigma, p_a, p_a)\Psi_{2M} \sqcap \text{rhs}_M(q, \sigma, p_a, p_\sigma)\Psi_{2M})$$

if and only if  $\varepsilon \in V_\perp(a(e) \sqcap a(\langle q, p_\sigma \rangle)) = V_\perp(a(\perp))$ , which is false. So,  $N$  has the rule  $q_0(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow q_1(x_1)$ , where  $q_1 = (a(e), \sigma(e))$  by (2)(b) of Lemma 25. It now follows from (1) of Lemma 25 that  $N$  has the rules  $q_1(a) \rightarrow a(e)$  and  $q_1(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow \sigma(e)$ . So, the construction ends with the dtop  $N$  that has axiom  $A_N = q_0(x_0)$  and the rules  $q_0(a) \rightarrow e$ ,  $q_0(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow q_1(x_1)$ ,  $q_1(a) \rightarrow a(e)$ , and  $q_1(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow \sigma(e)$ . Obviously,  $N$  is not equivalent to  $M$ . And  $N$  indeed does not satisfy Property (A) of Lemma 29 because, although  $\text{rhs}_N(q_0, \sigma) = q_1(x_1)$ , we have  $\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q_0, \sigma, p_a, p_\sigma) = \text{rhs}_M(q, \sigma, p_a, p_\sigma) = a(q(x_2)) \notin \mathcal{T}_\Delta(\{x_1\})$ .

We note that, in the above construction, the choice of  $s_1$  is irrelevant because  $x_1$  does not occur in any right-hand side of a rule of  $M$ . If we choose some  $s_2 \neq a$ , then we obtain for  $N$  the state  $q_1 = (a(t_2), \sigma(t_2))$  with the rules  $q_1(a) \rightarrow a(t_2)$  and  $q_1(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow \sigma(t_2)$ , where  $t_2 = q_M(s_2)$ .  $\square$

Continuing the previous example, we now show that the construction of a rule of the dtop  $N$  can fail because it is impossible to determine  $i$  for an occurrence of  $\bar{q}(x_i)$  in its right-hand side.



*Example 32.* Consider the same dtla  $M$  as in Example 31, but change its last rule into  $q(\sigma(x_1 : p_\sigma, x_2 : p_a) \rightarrow a(e))$ ; so now the last symbol  $r_n$  in the output tree is always  $a$ . As before,  $N$  may have a rule of the form  $q_0(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow q_1(x_i)$ , but now  $i = 1$  if and only if  $\varepsilon \in V_\perp(a(e) \sqcap a(e)) = V_\perp(a(e))$ , which is false. So, both  $i = 1$  and  $i = 2$  are false, and the construction of  $N$  fails.

Consider again the same dtla  $M$  as in the previous example, but now change its first rule into  $q(\sigma(x_1 : p_a, x_2 : p_\sigma) \rightarrow \sigma(q(x_2)))$ ; so now  $r_1, \dots, r_{n-1}$  in the output tree are always  $\sigma$ . For the possible rule  $q_0(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow q_1(x_i)$  we now obtain that  $i = 2$  if and only if  $\varepsilon \in V_\perp(a(e) \sqcap \sigma(\langle q, p_\sigma \rangle)) = V_\perp(\perp)$ , which is true. So, both  $i = 1$  and  $i = 2$  are true, and the construction of  $N$  fails.  $\square$

Finally, we give an example in which the construction of  $N$  succeeds and returns a dtop that is equivalent to  $M$ .

*Example 33.* Consider the la-uniform version of the dtla  $M$  of Example 9, as presented in Example 14. As observed after Example 14, it is easy to see that  $M$  is canonical. Recall that its translation is such that  $M(aa) = aa$ ,  $M(ab) = ab$ ,  $M(ba) = ba$ ,  $M(bb) = bb$  and  $M(\sigma(s_1, s_2)) = \sigma(M(s_1), M(s_2), \#(y, z))$  where  $y \in \{a, b\}$  is the first letter of the label of the left-most leaf of  $\sigma(s_1, s_2)$  and  $z \in \{a, b\}$  is the second letter of the label of its right-most leaf. It has  $P_M = \{p_{aa}, p_{ab}, p_{ba}, p_{bb}\}$  with  $\delta(yz) = p_{yz}$  and  $\delta(\sigma, p_{wx}, p_{yz}) = p_{wz}$  for all  $w, x, y, z \in \{a, b\}$ . It has  $Q_M = \{q_{yz} \mid y, z \in \{a, b\}\}$ , its axioms are  $A_M(p_{yz}) = q_{yz}(x_0)$ , and its rules are  $q_{yz}(yz) \rightarrow yz$  and

$$q_{wz}(\sigma(x_1 : p_{wx}, x_2 : p_{yz})) \rightarrow \sigma(q_{wx}(x_1), q_{yz}(x_2), \#(w, z))$$

for all  $w, x, y, z \in \{a, b\}$ . In Example 18 we have seen that  $\text{diftup}(M)$  consists of the three 4-tuples  $(a, a, b, b)$ ,  $(a, b, a, b)$ , and  $(\langle q_{aa}, p_{aa} \rangle, \langle q_{ab}, p_{ab} \rangle, \langle q_{ba}, p_{ba} \rangle, \langle q_{bb}, p_{bb} \rangle)$ .

We construct  $N$  as in the proof of Theorem 26; since  $\text{maxdiff}(M) = 0$ , the construction is the same for every difference bound  $h(M)$ . By Lemma 24,  $A_N = q_0(x_0)$  with  $\varphi(q_0, p_{yz}) = \langle q_{yz}, p_{yz} \rangle$  for  $y, z \in \{a, b\}$ . So,  $q_0 = (\langle q_{aa}, p_{aa} \rangle, \langle q_{ab}, p_{ab} \rangle, \langle q_{ba}, p_{ba} \rangle, \langle q_{bb}, p_{bb} \rangle)$ . From (1) of Lemma 25 we obtain that  $\text{rhs}_N(q_0, yz)\Phi = \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q_0, yz) = \varphi(q_0, p_{yz})[\langle q_{yz}, p_{yz} \rangle \leftarrow \text{rhs}_M(q_{yz}, yz)] = \text{rhs}_M(q_{yz}, yz) = yz$ , and hence  $N$  has the rule  $q_0(yz) \rightarrow yz$  for all  $y, z \in \{a, b\}$ . To compute  $\text{rhs}_N(q_0, \sigma)$ , we first observe that for every  $w, x, y, z \in \{a, b\}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q_0, \sigma, p_{wx}, p_{yz}) &= \varphi(q_0, p_{wz})[\langle q_{wz}, p_{wz} \rangle \leftarrow \text{rhs}_M(q_{wz}, \sigma, p_{wx}, p_{yz})] \\ &= \text{rhs}_M(q_{wz}, \sigma, p_{wx}, p_{yz}) \\ &= \sigma(q_{wx}(x_1), q_{yz}(x_2), \#(w, z)). \end{aligned}$$

So, by (1) of Lemma 25,  $\text{rhs}_N(q_0, \sigma)\Phi = \sigma(\perp, \perp, \#(\perp, \perp))$ . Thus,  $N$  may have a rule of the form

$$q_0(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow \sigma(q_3(x_{i_3}), q_4(x_{i_4}), \#(q_1(x_{i_1}), q_2(x_{i_2}))).$$

Let  $s_1 = s_2 = aa$ . From (2)(a) of Lemma 25 we obtain for  $v = (3, 1)$  that

$$\begin{aligned} i_1 = 1 &\iff v \in V_\perp(\cap \{\text{rhs}_{M, \varphi}(q_0, \sigma, p_{wx}, p_{aa})\Psi_{1M} \mid w, x \in \{a, b\}\}) \\ &\iff v \in V_\perp(\cap \{\sigma(\langle q_{wx}, p_{wx} \rangle, aa, \#(w, a)) \mid w, x \in \{a, b\}\}) \end{aligned}$$

if and only if  $v \in V_{\perp}(\sigma(\perp, aa, \#(\perp, a)))$ , which is true, and

$$\begin{aligned} i_1 = 2 &\iff v \in V_{\perp}(\cap\{\text{rhs}_{M,\varphi}(q_0, \sigma, p_{aa}, p_{yz})\Psi_{2M} \mid y, z \in \{a, b\}\}) \\ &\iff v \in V_{\perp}(\cap\{\sigma(aa, \langle q_{yz}, p_{yz} \rangle, \#(a, z)) \mid y, z \in \{a, b\}\}) \end{aligned}$$

if and only if  $v \in V_{\perp}(\sigma(aa, \perp, \#(a, \perp)))$ , which is false. So  $i_1 = 1$  and  $\varphi(q_1, p_{wx}) = w$  for all  $w, x \in \{a, b\}$  by (2)(b) of Lemma 25. Thus,  $q_1 = (a, a, b, b)$ . Similarly we obtain for  $v = (3, 2)$  that  $i_2 = 2$  and  $\varphi(q_2, p_{yz}) = z$ , for  $v = 1$  that  $i_3 = 1$  and  $\varphi(q_3, p_{wx}) = \langle q_{wx}, p_{wx} \rangle$ , and for  $v = 2$  that  $i_4 = 2$  and  $\varphi(q_4, p_{yz}) = \langle q_{yz}, p_{yz} \rangle$ . Hence  $q_2 = (a, b, a, b)$ ,  $q_3 = q_4 = q_0$  and  $N$  has the rule

$$q_0(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow \sigma(q_0(x_1), q_0(x_2), \#(q_1(x_1), q_2(x_2))).$$

Next we consider  $q_2$ . Clearly, both  $\text{rhs}_{M,\varphi}(q_2, yz)$  and  $\text{rhs}_{M,\varphi}(q_2, \sigma, p_{wx}, p_{yz})$  equal  $z$ . Thus,  $N$  has the rules  $q_2(yz) \rightarrow z$  and it may have a rule of the form  $q_2(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow q(x_i)$ . Taking again  $s_1 = s_2 = aa$ , we get that

$$i = 1 \iff \varepsilon \in V_{\perp}(\cap\{\text{rhs}_{M,\varphi}(q_2, \sigma, p_{wx}, p_{aa}) \mid w, x \in \{a, b\}\})$$

if and only if  $\varepsilon \in V_{\perp}(a)$ , which is false, and

$$i = 2 \iff \varepsilon \in V_{\perp}(\cap\{\text{rhs}_{M,\varphi}(q_2, \sigma, p_{aa}, p_{yz}) \mid y, z \in \{a, b\}\})$$

if and only if  $\varepsilon \in V_{\perp}(a \sqcap b)$ , which is true. So  $i = 2$  and  $\varphi(q, p_{yz}) = z$ , which means that  $q = q_2$ . Hence,  $N$  has the rule  $q_2(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow q_2(x_2)$ . Similarly it has the rules  $q_1(yz) \rightarrow y$  and  $q_1(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) \rightarrow q_1(x_1)$ .

Thus, the construction ends with the dtop  $N$  that has axiom  $A_N = q_0(x_0)$  and the rules

$$\begin{aligned} q_0(yz) &\rightarrow yz, & q_0(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) &\rightarrow \sigma(q_0(x_1), q_0(x_2), \#(q_1(x_1), q_2(x_2))), \\ q_1(yz) &\rightarrow y, & q_1(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) &\rightarrow q_1(x_1), \\ q_2(yz) &\rightarrow z, & q_2(\sigma(x_1, x_2)) &\rightarrow q_2(x_2). \end{aligned}$$

It should be clear that  $N$  is equivalent to  $M$  (cf. the end of Example 9). It is also straightforward to check that  $N$  has Property (A) of Lemma 29.

We finally note that the original dtla  $M$  of Example 9 is ultralinear and b-erasing (even linear and nonerasing). The difference bound in the proof of Theorem 66 for this  $M$  is  $1 + 4 \cdot 2 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 4^2 = 1153$ . By Lemma 13, the la-uniform version of  $M$  has the same difference bound. Obviously, this is a rather large bound, in view of the fact that  $\text{maxdiff}(M) = 0$ .  $\square$

It is left to the reader to use the construction in the proof of Theorem 26 to obtain a dtop that is equivalent to the dtla of Example 8.

## 7 Links and Origins

In this section we define two basic concepts for dtlas, and discuss some of their properties. Thus, this section can be viewed as a sequel to Section 3.

**Convention.** In this section and the next two sections we assume that  $M$  is a dtla that is **initialized** with initial states  $q_{0,p}$  for  $p \in P$  and **la-uniform** with la-map  $\rho : Q \rightarrow P$ , cf. Lemmas 11 and 13. Since  $M$  is la-uniform, all its initial states  $q_{0,p}$  are distinct.

If  $M(s) = t$ , then every node  $v$  of the output tree  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta$  is produced (together with its label) at a certain node  $u$  of the input tree  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  by the application of a rule  $q(a(x_1:p_1, \dots, x_k:p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  at  $u$ . The node  $v$  is an instantiation of a node  $z$  of  $\zeta$  with label in  $\Delta$ . The triple  $(q, u, z)$  will be called the “origin” of  $v$ , cf. [24].

In the special case that  $z = \varepsilon$ , there exist pairs  $(q', u')$  for which there is a reachable sentential form  $\xi$  for  $s$  such that  $\xi/v = q'(u')$ . In such a case  $v$  is already a node of  $\xi$ , but does not yet have a label in  $\Delta$ . In fact,  $(q, u)$  is such a pair, but there can be more due to the presence of erasing rules: if  $(q', u')$  is such a pair and  $\text{rhs}(q', s, u') = q''(x_i)$ , then  $(q'', u'i)$  is also such a pair. A pair  $(q', u')$  will be called a “link” to  $v$  (cf. [17]). For convenience it will be denoted as a triple  $(q', u', \#)$ , and the origin  $(q, u, z)$  of  $v$  will also be called a link to  $v$ .

We now formally define *links*. For  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  and every  $v \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$ , the sets  $\text{link}_s(v)$  of triples  $(q, u, z)$  with  $q \in Q$ ,  $u \in V(s)$  and  $z \in \mathbb{N}_+^* \cup \{\#\}$ , are defined recursively to be the smallest sets such that:

- (1) If  $\delta(s) = p$ , then  $(q_{0,p}, \varepsilon, \#) \in \text{link}_s(\varepsilon)$ .
- (2) If  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$  and  $\text{rhs}(q, s, u) = \zeta$ , then
  - (a)  $(q, u, z) \in \text{link}_s(vz)$  for every  $z \in V_\Delta(\zeta)$ , and
  - (b)  $(\bar{q}, ui, \#) \in \text{link}_s(vz)$  for every  $z \in V(\zeta)$  with  $\zeta/z = \bar{q}(x_i)$ .

The above intuition about links is proved in the next two lemmas.

**Lemma 34.** *Let  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ ,  $q \in Q$ ,  $u \in V(s)$ , and  $z, v \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$ . Then*

- (1)  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$  if and only if there is a sentential form  $\xi$  of  $M$  such that  $q_{0,\delta(s)}(\varepsilon) \Rightarrow_s^* \xi$  and  $\xi/v = q(u)$ ,
- (2)  $(q, u, z) \in \text{link}_s(v)$  if and only if there are  $\hat{v} \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  and a sentential form  $\xi$  of  $M$  such that  $v = \hat{v}z$ ,  $q_{0,\delta(s)}(\varepsilon) \Rightarrow_s^* \xi$ ,  $\xi/\hat{v} = q(u)$ , and  $z \in V_\Delta(\text{rhs}(q, s, u))$ ,
- (3)  $\text{link}_s(v) \neq \emptyset$  if and only if  $v \in V(M(s))$ , and
- (4) if  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$  or  $(q, u, z) \in \text{link}_s(v)$ , then  $\rho(q) = \delta(s/u)$ .

*Proof.* Since the definition of  $\text{link}_s$  closely follows the semantics of  $M$ , (1) and (2) are easy to prove by recursion induction on the definition of  $\text{link}_s$  in one direction, and by induction on the length of the computation  $q_{0,\delta(s)}(\varepsilon) \Rightarrow_s^* \xi$  in the other direction.

Clearly, the right-hand side of (1) implies that  $v \in V(M(s))$ , by Lemma 2(2) applied to  $\xi \Rightarrow_s^* M(s)$ , and the right-hand side of (2) also implies that  $v \in V(M(s))$  because there is a computation step  $\xi \Rightarrow_s \xi' = \xi[\hat{v} \leftarrow \text{rhs}(q, s, u)[x_i \leftarrow ui \mid i \in \mathbb{N}_+]]$  with  $v \in V(\xi')$ . Thus, if  $\text{link}_s(v) \neq \emptyset$  then  $v \in V(M(s))$ . Now let  $v \in V(M(s))$  and consider, in a computation of  $M$  that translates  $s$  into  $M(s)$ , the first sentential form  $\xi$  such that  $v \in V_{\Delta \cup Q}(\xi)$ . If  $v \in V_Q(\xi)$ , then  $\text{link}_s(v)$  contains a triple  $(q, u, \#)$  by (1). If

$v \in V_\Delta(\xi)$ , then  $v$  is produced in the computation step  $\xi' \Rightarrow_s \xi$  where  $\xi'$  is the previous sentential form, and then  $\text{link}_s(v)$  contains a triple  $(q, u, z)$  by (2) applied to  $\xi'$ . Thus,  $\text{link}_s(v) \neq \emptyset$ .

(4) follows from (1) and (2) by Lemma 12(4).  $\square$

**Lemma 35.** *For every  $v \in V(M(s))$ , either  $\text{link}_s(v) = \{(q, u, z)\}$  with  $z \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  and  $z \neq \varepsilon$ , or  $\text{link}_s(v) = \{(q_1, u_1, \#), \dots, (q_n, u_n, \#), (q_n, u_n, \varepsilon)\}$  with  $n \geq 1$  and for every  $j \in [n-1]$  there exists  $i_j \in \mathbb{N}_+$  such that  $\text{rhs}(q_j, s, u_j) = q_{j+1}(x_{i_j})$  and  $u_{j+1} = u_j i_j$ .*

*Proof.* Let us say that a mapping  $\lambda$  from  $\mathbb{N}_+^*$  to the finite subsets of  $Q \times V(s) \times (\mathbb{N}^* \cup \{\#\})$  is an *approximation* of  $\text{link}_s$  if it is obtained by a finite number of applications of requirements (1) and (2) of the definition of  $\text{link}_s$ , starting with  $\lambda(v) = \emptyset$  for all  $v \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  (and so  $\lambda(v) \subseteq \text{link}_s(v)$  for all  $v$ ). It is straightforward to show by induction on the number of such applications that for every  $v \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$ , either  $\lambda(v) = \emptyset$ , or  $\lambda(v) = \{(q, u, z)\}$  with  $z \in \mathbb{N}_+^* - \{\varepsilon\}$ , or  $\lambda(v) = \{(q_1, u_1, \#), \dots, (q_n, u_n, \#), (q_n, u_n, \varepsilon)\}$  with the condition stated in the lemma, or  $\lambda(v) = \{(q_1, u_1, \#), \dots, (q_n, u_n, \#)\}$  with that same condition. In the last case, Lemma 34(4) implies that  $\text{rhs}(q_n, s, u_n)$  is defined, and hence  $\lambda(v)$  is properly included in  $\text{link}_s(v)$  by the definition of  $\text{link}_s$ . The first case does not occur when  $v \in V(M(s))$ , by Lemma 34(3). Since  $\text{link}_s$  is itself an approximation of  $\text{link}_s$ , this proves the lemma.  $\square$

Lemma 35 shows that for every  $v \in V(M(s))$  there is exactly one triple  $(q, u, z)$  in  $\text{link}_s(v)$  with  $z \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$ . Thus, for  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  and  $v \in V(M(s))$ , we define  $\text{or}_s(v) \in Q \times V(s) \times \mathbb{N}_+^*$ , called the *origin* of  $v$ , by  $\text{or}_s(v) = (q, u, z)$  if  $(q, u, z) \in \text{link}_s(v)$ . We denote  $u$  also by  $\text{orn}_s(v)$  and call it the *origin node* of  $v$ .

In the remainder of this section we state some elementary properties of links and origins.

**Lemma 36.**

- (1) *If  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$ , then  $M(s)/v = q_M(s/u)$ .*
- (2) *If  $\text{or}_s(v) = (q, u, z)$ , then  $z \in V_\Delta(\zeta)$  and*

$$M(s)/v = \zeta/z[\bar{q}(x_i) \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(s/ui) \mid \bar{q} \in Q, i \in \mathbb{N}_+]$$

where  $\zeta = \text{rhs}(q, s, u)$ .

*Proof.* If  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$  then, by Lemma 34(1), there is a reachable sentential form  $\xi$  for  $s$  such that  $\xi/v = q(u)$ . Since  $\xi \Rightarrow_s^* M(s)$ , we obtain that  $\xi/v \Rightarrow_s^* M(s)/v$  and so  $M(s)/v = q_M(s/u)$  by Lemma 2(2).

If  $\text{or}_s(v) = (q, u, z)$  then, by Lemma 34(2), there are  $\hat{v} \in \mathbb{N}^*$  and a reachable sentential form  $\xi$  for  $s$  such that  $v = \hat{v}z$ ,  $\xi/\hat{v} = q(u)$ , and  $z \in V_\Delta(\zeta)$ . Hence  $\xi \Rightarrow_s \xi' \Rightarrow_s^* M(s)$ , where  $\xi' = \xi[\hat{v} \leftarrow \zeta[x_i \leftarrow ui \mid i \in \mathbb{N}_+]]$ , and  $\xi'/v = \zeta/z[x_i \leftarrow ui \mid i \in \mathbb{N}_+] \Rightarrow_s^* M(s)/v$ . Then Lemma 2(2) implies that  $M(s)/v = \zeta/z[x_i \leftarrow ui \mid i \in \mathbb{N}_+][\bar{q}(ui) \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(s/ui) \mid \bar{q} \in Q, i \in \mathbb{N}_+]$ , which proves the statement.  $\square$

The following four lemmas state relationships between the link sets and the ancestor relation.

Recall that (since  $M$  is initialized)  $\text{maxrhs}(M)$  is the maximal height of the right-hand sides of rules of  $M$ .

**Lemma 37.** *Let  $(q_1, u_1, z_1) \in \text{link}_s(v_1)$  and  $(q_2, u_2, z_2) \in \text{link}_s(v_2)$ , and let  $v_1$  be a proper ancestor of  $v_2$ . Then:*

- (1)  $u_1$  is an ancestor of  $u_2$ , and
- (2) if  $u_1 = u_2$ , then  $z_1, z_2 \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  and  $|v_2| - |v_1| \leq \text{maxrhs}(M)$ .

*Proof.* It is immediate from the definition of  $\text{link}_s$  that if  $v_1$  is a proper ancestor of  $v_2$ , then  $u_1$  is an ancestor of  $u_2$ . Moreover, if  $u_1 = u_2 = u$ , then  $q_1 = q_2 = q$ ,  $z_1, z_2 \in V_\Delta(\text{rhs}(q, s, u))$ , and there exists  $v \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  such that  $v_1 = vz_1$  and  $v_2 = vz_2$ ; hence  $|v_2| - |v_1| = |z_2| - |z_1| \leq \text{ht}(\text{rhs}(q, s, u)) \leq \text{maxrhs}(M)$ .  $\square$

The next lemma is an immediate corollary of Lemma 37.

**Lemma 38.** *Let  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  and  $v, \hat{v} \in V(M(s))$ .*

- (1) *If  $\hat{v}$  is an ancestor of  $v$ , then  $\text{orn}_s(\hat{v})$  is an ancestor of  $\text{orn}_s(v)$ .*
- (2) *If  $\hat{v}$  is an ancestor of  $v$  and  $\text{orn}_s(\hat{v}) = \text{orn}_s(v)$ , then  $|v| - |\hat{v}| \leq \text{maxrhs}(M)$ .*

**Lemma 39.** *If  $\text{or}_s(v) = (q, u, z)$ , then there exists  $\hat{v} \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  such that  $v = \hat{v}z$  and  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(\hat{v})$ .*

*Proof.* Immediate by (2) and (1) of Lemma 34.  $\square$

**Lemma 40.** *If  $(q, u, z) \in \text{link}_s(v)$  and  $\hat{u}$  is an ancestor of  $u$ , then there exist an ancestor  $\hat{v}$  of  $v$  and a state  $q' \in Q$  such that  $(q', \hat{u}, \#) \in \text{link}_s(\hat{v})$ .*

*Proof.* Straightforward by recursion induction on the definition of  $\text{link}_s$ , as follows. For  $(q_{0,\delta(s)}, \varepsilon, \#) \in \text{link}_s(\varepsilon)$  we have  $\hat{u} = \varepsilon$  and we take  $\hat{v} = \varepsilon$  and  $q' = q_{0,\delta(s)}$ . Assume now that the statement holds for  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$ . For  $(q, u, z) \in \text{link}_s(vz)$  and an ancestor  $\hat{u}$  of  $u$  we obtain by induction that  $(q', \hat{u}, \#) \in \text{link}_s(\hat{v})$  for an ancestor  $\hat{v}$  of  $v$ , which is also an ancestor of  $vz$ . For  $(\bar{q}, ui, \#) \in \text{link}_s(vz)$  and an ancestor  $\hat{u}$  of  $u$  (and hence of  $ui$ ) the previous argument also holds; for the ancestor  $\hat{u} = ui$  of  $ui$  we take  $\hat{v} = vz$  and  $q' = \bar{q}$ .  $\square$

Intuitively, a fact such as  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$  does not depend on the whole of  $s$ , but only on the proper ancestors of  $u$  and their children. This is proved in the next lemma.

Let  $s, s' \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  and  $u \in V(s) \cap V(s')$ . We will say that  $u$  is *similar in  $s$  and  $s'$*  if

- (1)  $\text{lab}(s, u) = \text{lab}(s', u)$ , and
- (2)  $\delta(s/ui) = \delta(s'/ui)$  for every child  $ui$  of  $u$ .

This implies that  $\text{rhs}(q, s, u) = \text{rhs}(q, s', u)$  for every  $q \in Q$ .

**Lemma 41.** *Let  $s, s' \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  be such that  $\delta(s) = \delta(s')$ , and let  $u \in V(s) \cap V(s')$  be such that every proper ancestor of  $u$  is similar in  $s$  and  $s'$ . Let  $q \in Q$  and  $v, z \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$ .*

- (1) *If  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$  then  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_{s'}(v)$ .*
- (2) *Let, moreover,  $u$  be similar in  $s$  and  $s'$ .  
If  $(q, u, z) \in \text{link}_s(v)$  then  $(q, u, z) \in \text{link}_{s'}(v)$ .*

*Proof.* We prove (1) by induction on  $|u|$ . By the definition of  $\text{link}_s$ , if  $(q, \varepsilon, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$ , then  $q = q_{0, \delta(s)}$  and  $v = \varepsilon$ , and so  $(q, \varepsilon, \#) \in \text{link}_{s'}(v)$  by the definition of  $\text{link}_{s'}$ . For the induction step we consider, by the definition of  $\text{link}_s$ , that  $(\bar{q}, ui, \#) \in \text{link}_s(vz)$  where  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$ ,  $\text{rhs}(q, s, u) = \zeta$  and  $\zeta/z = \bar{q}(x_i)$ . By induction,  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_{s'}(v)$ . Since  $u$  is similar in  $s$  and  $s'$ ,  $\text{rhs}(q, s', u) = \zeta$ . Hence  $(\bar{q}, ui, \#) \in \text{link}_{s'}(vz)$  by the definition of  $\text{link}_{s'}$ .

To prove (2) we consider, by the definition of  $\text{link}_s$ , that  $(q, u, z) \in \text{link}_s(vz)$  where  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$ ,  $\text{rhs}(q, s, u) = \zeta$ , and  $z \in V_\Delta(\zeta)$ . By (1),  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_{s'}(v)$ , and since  $u$  is similar in  $s$  and  $s'$  by assumption,  $\text{rhs}(q, s', u) = \zeta$ . Hence  $(q, u, z) \in \text{link}_{s'}(vz)$  by the definition of  $\text{link}_{s'}$ .  $\square$

Note that in this lemma, by reasons of symmetry, the implications are actually equivalences.

In the next section we wish to change (in fact, pump) parts of the input tree  $s$  in such a way that a given node  $v$  of  $M(s)$  is preserved, together with the labels of all its ancestors (cf. Lemma 6). Intuitively, this can be done as long as we do not change the following in  $s$ : the origin node  $u$  of  $v$ , the labels of all ancestors of  $u$ , and for each ancestor of  $u$  the look-ahead states at its children. This is proved in the next lemma.

**Lemma 42.** *Let  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  and  $v \in V(M(s))$ , and let  $\text{orn}_s(v) = u \in V(s)$ . Moreover, let  $s' \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  be such that  $u \in V(s')$  and every ancestor of  $u$  (including  $u$  itself) is similar in  $s$  and  $s'$ . Then  $v \in V(M(s'))$  and  $\text{lab}(M(s'), \hat{v}) = \text{lab}(M(s), \hat{v})$  for every ancestor  $\hat{v}$  of  $v$  (including  $v$  itself).*

*Proof.* Since, by Lemma 38(1),  $\text{orn}_s(\hat{v})$  is an ancestor of  $u$ , it suffices to prove the lemma for  $\hat{v} = v$ . Let  $\text{or}_s(v) = (q, u, z)$ . Since the root  $\varepsilon$  is similar in  $s$  and  $s'$ ,  $\delta(s) = \delta(s')$ . It now follows from Lemma 41(2) that  $v \in V(M(s'))$  and  $\text{or}_{s'}(v) = (q, u, z) = \text{or}_s(v)$ . Using this, and the fact that  $\text{rhs}(q, s', u) = \text{rhs}(q, s, u)$  (because  $u$  is similar in  $s$  and  $s'$ ), we obtain from Lemma 36(2) that  $\text{lab}(M(s'), v) = \text{lab}(M(s), v)$ .  $\square$

## 8 Auxiliary Bounds

If  $M$  is an initialized la-uniform dtla, then so is  $M^\circ$ , cf. Lemma 12(3). In this section and the next, the lemmas of the previous section will be applied to  $M^\circ$  instead of  $M$ .

In view of Theorem 26 and Corollary 27, we wish to compute a difference bound for  $M$ , i.e., an upper bound for  $\text{maxdiff}(M)$  when  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite. Thus, we are looking for an upper bound on the height of all difference trees of  $M$ , i.e., all trees  $M(C[p])/v$  where  $C$  is a  $\Sigma$ -context,  $p \in P$ , and  $v$  is a difference node of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$  where  $p' \in P$ . Let  $u$  and  $u'$  be the respective origin nodes of  $v$ , i.e.,  $u = \text{orn}_{C[p]}(v)$  and  $u' = \text{orn}_{C[p']}(v)$ .

We first compute an upper bound for the case where  $u$  is *not* a proper ancestor of  $u'$ . The idea is that if the height of  $M(C[p])/v$  is larger than that upper bound, then we can pump the subtree at one of  $u$ 's children (without changing the look-ahead state at that child), turning  $C$  into  $\bar{C}$ , in such a way that  $M(\bar{C}[p])/v$  becomes arbitrarily large. Since the pumping does not change the labels of the ancestors of  $u$  and  $u'$ , nor the look-ahead states at the children of those ancestors,  $v$  is still a difference node of  $M(\bar{C}[p])$  and  $M(\bar{C}[p'])$  by Lemmas 6 and 42.

To express an upper bound for the height of  $M(C[p])/v$ , we use an auxiliary bound defined as follows.

**Definition 43.** A number  $h_o(M) \in \mathbb{N}$  is an output bound for  $M$  if it has the following two properties, for every  $q \in Q$  and  $p, p', p_1, p'_1 \in P$ :

- (1) if the set  $\{q_M(s) \mid s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma, \delta(s) = p_1\}$  is finite, then  $\text{ht}(t) \leq h_o(M)$  for every tree  $t$  in this set, and
- (2) if the set  $\{q_M(C[p]) \mid C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma, \delta(C[p]) = p_1, \delta(C[p']) = p'_1\}$  is finite, then  $\text{ht}(t) \leq h_o(M)$  for every tree  $t$  in this set.

Note that since  $M$  is la-uniform, it suffices to consider the case where  $p_1 = \rho(q)$ .

The minimal output bound  $h_o(M)$  can be computed from  $M$ , because every set mentioned in Definition 43 is the image of a regular tree language by a dtla translation (as will be shown in the proof of Theorem 49), and because it is decidable whether or not such an image is finite, and if so, the elements of that image can be computed.<sup>17</sup> Also, for completeness sake, we will prove by a pumping argument that  $\text{maxrhs}(M) \cdot |Q| \cdot (|P| + 2)$  is an output bound for  $M$ , in Lemma 48 and Theorem 49.

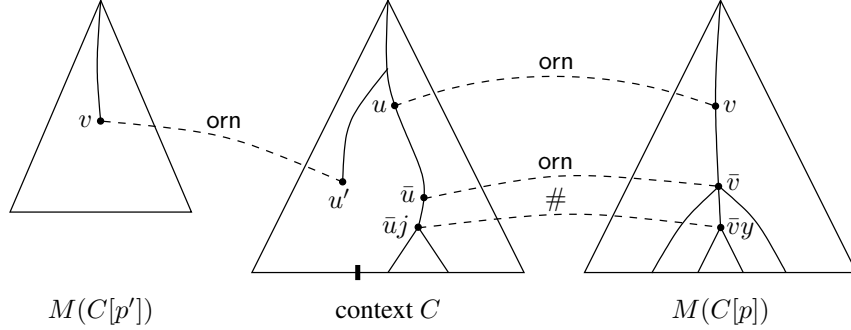
We now show that the upper bound discussed above is  $\text{maxrhs}(M) + h_o(M)$ . For later use (in the proof of Lemma 46) we prove a slightly more general result; the case discussed above is obtained by taking  $\bar{v} = v$ . Recall that  $\text{maxrhs}(M)$  is the maximal height of the right-hand sides of rules of  $M$ .

**Lemma 44.** Let  $h_o(M)$  be an output bound for  $M$ . Let  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p, p' \in P$ , let  $v$  be a difference node of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$ , and let  $\bar{v}$  be a descendant of  $v$  in  $M(C[p])$  such that  $\text{orn}_{C[p]}(\bar{v})$  is not a proper ancestor of  $\text{orn}_{C[p']}(\bar{v})$ . If  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite, then

$$\text{ht}(M(C[p])/v) \leq \text{maxrhs}(M) + h_o(M).$$

<sup>17</sup> See [5, Theorem 4.5]. Note that every dtla translation can be realized by a macro tree transducer.

*Proof.* Assume that  $\text{ht}(M(C[p])/\bar{v}) > \text{maxrhs}(M) + h_o(M)$ . Let  $u = \text{orn}_{C[p]}(v)$  and  $u' = \text{orn}_{C[p']}(v)$ , and let  $(q, \bar{u}, z) = \text{or}_{C[p]}(\bar{v})$ . By Lemma 38(1),  $u$  is an ancestor of  $\bar{u}$ . By Lemma 36(2),  $M(C[p])/\bar{v} = \zeta/z[\bar{q}(x_i) \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(C[p]/\bar{u}i) \mid \bar{q} \in Q, i \in \mathbb{N}_+]$  where  $\zeta = \text{rhs}(q, C[p], \bar{u})$ . Since  $\text{ht}(M(C[p])/\bar{v}) > \text{maxrhs}(M) + h_o(M)$ , there exist  $y \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$ ,  $q' \in Q$ , and  $j \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $\zeta/zy = q'(x_j)$  and  $\text{ht}(q'_M(C[p]/\bar{u}j)) > h_o(M)$ . Note that  $M(C[p])/\bar{v}y = q'_M(C[p]/\bar{u}j)$ . Note also that, by the definition of  $\text{link}$ ,  $(q', \bar{u}j, \#) \in \text{link}_{C[p]}(\bar{v}y)$ . The situation is shown in Figure 1 (but note that it is also possible that  $u$  is an ancestor of  $u'$ , as in Figure 2).



**Fig. 1.**  $\bar{u} = \text{orn}_{C[p]}(\bar{v})$  is not a proper ancestor of  $u' = \text{orn}_{C[p']}(v)$

There are now two cases:  $p$  does or does not occur in  $C[p]/\bar{u}j$ . Let  $p_j = \delta(C[p]/\bar{u}j)$ .

*Case 1:*  $p$  does not occur in  $C[p]/\bar{u}j$ , i.e.,  $C[p]/\bar{u}j = C/\bar{u}j \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ .<sup>18</sup> By Definition 43(1) of  $h_o(M)$ , the set  $\{q'_M(s) \mid s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma, \delta(s) = p_j\}$  is infinite. Hence there exist trees  $s_n \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$  such that  $\delta(s_n) = p_j$  and  $\text{ht}(q'_M(s_n)) > n$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Let  $C_n = C[\bar{u}j \leftarrow s_n]$ .<sup>19</sup> Since  $\delta(s_n) = \delta(C[p]/\bar{u}j) = \delta(C[p']/\bar{u}j)$  and  $\bar{u}$  is not a proper ancestor of  $u$  or  $u'$ , it follows from Lemma 42 that  $\text{lab}(M(C_n[p]), \hat{v}) = \text{lab}(M(C[p]), \hat{v})$  for every ancestor  $\hat{v}$  of  $v$ , and similarly for  $p'$ . Hence, by Lemma 6,  $v$  is a difference node of  $M(C_n[p])$  and  $M(C_n[p'])$ , and so  $M(C_n[p])/v$  is in  $\text{diff}(M)$ . Also, since  $(q', \bar{u}j, \#) \in \text{link}_{C[p]}(\bar{v}y)$ , we obtain from Lemma 41(1) that  $(q', \bar{u}j, \#) \in \text{link}_{C_n[p]}(\bar{v}y)$ . Consequently, by Lemma 36(1),  $M(C_n[p])/\bar{v}y = q'_M(C_n[p]/\bar{u}j) = q'_M(s_n)$ , which implies that  $\text{ht}(M(C_n[p])/v) \geq \text{ht}(M(C_n[p])/\bar{v}y) > n$ . Hence  $\text{diff}(M)$  is infinite.

*Case 2:*  $p$  occurs in  $C[p]/\bar{u}j$ , i.e.,  $C[p]/\bar{u}j = D[p]$  where  $D = C/\bar{u}j \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$ . Let  $p'_j = \delta(C[p']/\bar{u}j)$ . By Definition 43(2) of  $h_o(M)$ , the set  $\{q'_M(D[p]) \mid D \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma, \delta(D[p]) = p_j, \delta(D[p']) = p'_j\}$  is infinite. Hence there exist contexts  $D_n$  such that  $\delta(D_n[p]) = p_j$ ,  $\delta(D_n[p']) = p'_j$ , and  $\text{ht}(q'_M(D_n[p])) > n$ . Let  $C_n = C[\bar{u}j \leftarrow D_n]$ . It can now be shown in the same way as in Case 1 that  $M(C_n[p])/v$  is in  $\text{diff}(M)$  and  $\text{ht}(M(C_n[p])/v) > n$ , and hence  $\text{diff}(M)$  is infinite. Note that the condition  $\delta(D_n[p']) = p'_j$  is needed to ensure that Lemma 42 is applicable to  $u'$ .  $\square$

<sup>18</sup> In Figure 1, the vertical thick line represents the node of  $C$  with label  $\perp$ . So, it shows Case 1.

<sup>19</sup> Recall that this is the context  $C$  in which the subtree at  $\bar{u}j$  is replaced by  $s_n$ .



We now consider the case where  $u$  is a proper ancestor of  $u'$ , and again wish to obtain an upper bound for the height of  $M(C[p])/v$ . It follows from Lemma 44 that  $\text{ht}(M(C[p])/v) \leq \text{maxrhs}(M) + h_o(M)$  for every descendant  $\bar{v}$  of  $v$  of which the origin node  $\bar{u}$  is not a proper ancestor of  $u'$ . But what about a descendant  $vw$  of  $v$  of which the origin node  $x$  is a proper ancestor of  $u'$ ?<sup>20</sup> Then, by the previous observation, it suffices to obtain an upper bound on  $|w|$ . Now we observe that, roughly speaking, when  $M$  arrives at node  $x$  of  $C[p]$  it generates node  $vw$  of  $M(C[p])$ , which is a descendant of  $v$ , but when  $M$  arrives at node  $x$  of  $C[p']$  it generates a node  $\hat{v}$  of  $M(C[p'])$  that is an ancestor of  $v$ . Hence, it suffices to have an upper bound on  $|vw| - |\hat{v}|$ , which measures how much the translation of  $M(C[p])$  is ahead of the translation of  $M(C[p'])$  when  $M$  arrives at  $x$ . Note that by Lemma 6,  $\text{lab}(C[p], \tilde{v}) = \text{lab}(C[p'], \tilde{v})$  for every proper ancestor  $\tilde{v}$  of  $\hat{v}$ .

Thus, to express an upper bound for the height of  $M(C[p])/v$ , we use an auxiliary bound defined as follows.

**Definition 45.** A number  $h_a(M) \in \mathbb{N}$  is an ancestral bound for  $M$  if either  $\text{diff}(M)$  is infinite or the following holds for every  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$ ,  $p, p' \in P$ ,  $x \in V(C)$ ,  $y \in V(M(C[p]))$ ,  $y' \in V(M(C[p']))$ , and  $q, q' \in Q$ :

if

- (1)  $(q, x, \#) \in \text{link}_{C[p]}(y)$  and  $(q', x, \#) \in \text{link}_{C[p']}(y')$ ,
- (2)  $y'$  is an ancestor of  $y$ , and
- (3)  $\text{lab}(C[p], \hat{y}') = \text{lab}(C[p'], \hat{y}')$  for every proper ancestor  $\hat{y}'$  of  $y'$ ,

then  $|y| - |y'| \leq h_a(M)$ .

We will show in the next section (Lemma 58) that every dtla  $M$  has an ancestral bound  $h_a(M)$ . Unfortunately, we do not know whether an ancestral bound can be computed from  $M$ . We will also show in the next section (Theorem 65) that it can be computed in the restricted case where  $M$  is ultralinear and b-erasing.

**Lemma 46.** Let  $h_o(M)$  be an output bound and  $h_a(M)$  an ancestral bound for  $M$ . Let  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p, p' \in P$ , and let  $v$  be a difference node of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$  such that  $\text{orn}_{C[p]}(v)$  is a proper ancestor of  $\text{orn}_{C[p']}(v)$ . If  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite, then

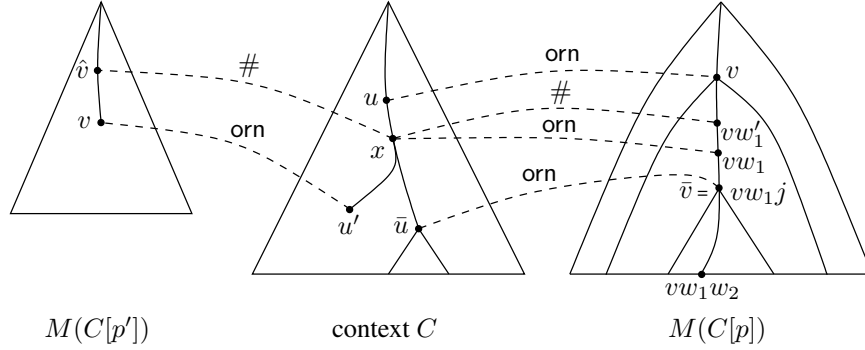
$$\text{ht}(M(C[p])/v) \leq 2 \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M) + h_o(M) + h_a(M) + 1.$$

*Proof.* Let  $\text{orn}_{C[p]}(v) = u$  and  $\text{orn}_{C[p']}(v) = u'$ . Consider an arbitrary leaf  $w$  of  $M(C[p])/v$ . We have to show that  $|w| \leq 2 \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M) + h_o(M) + h_a(M) + 1$ . The proof is illustrated in Figure 2.

Let  $w = w_1 w_2$  where  $w_1$  is the longest ancestor of  $w$  such that  $\text{orn}_{C[p]}(v w_1)$  is a proper ancestor of  $u'$ . If  $w_2 = j w'_2$  with  $j \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , then  $\text{orn}_{C[p]}(v w_1 j)$  is not a proper ancestor of  $u'$ , and so  $|w_2| = |w'_2| + 1 \leq \text{maxrhs}(M) + h_o(M) + 1$  by Lemma 44 (with  $\bar{v} = v w_1 j$ ). It now suffices to prove that  $|w_1| \leq \text{maxrhs}(M) + h_a(M)$ .

Let  $\text{or}_{C[p]}(v w_1) = (q, x, z)$ , and note that  $x$  is a descendant of  $u$  by Lemma 38(1) (and a proper ancestor of  $u'$  by definition of  $w_1$ ). If  $x = u$ , then  $|w_1| \leq \text{maxrhs}(M)$  by

<sup>20</sup> See Figure 2 for  $w = w_1$ .



**Fig. 2.**  $u = \text{orn}_{C[p]}(v)$  is a proper ancestor of  $u' = \text{orn}_{C[p']}(v)$

Lemma 38(2). Otherwise, by Lemma 39 (applied to  $vw_1$ ) and Lemma 37(1),  $w_1 = w'_1z$  such that  $(q, x, \#) \in \text{link}_{C[p]}(vw'_1)$ . Since  $|z| \leq \text{maxrhs}(M)$ , it now remains to show that  $|w'_1| \leq h_a(M)$ .

By Lemma 40, since  $x$  is an ancestor of  $u'$ , there is an ancestor  $\hat{v}$  of  $v$  such that  $(q', x, \#) \in \text{link}_{C[p']}(v)$  for some  $q' \in Q$ . We now apply Definition 45 of  $h_a(M)$  to the nodes  $y = vw'_1$  of  $M(C[p])$  and  $y' = \hat{v}$  of  $M(C[p'])$ , and obtain that  $|w'_1| \leq |vw'_1| - |\hat{v}| \leq h_a(M)$ . Note that condition (3) in Definition 45 is satisfied by Lemma 6, because  $\hat{v}$  is an ancestor of the difference node  $v$  of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 47.** *If  $h_o(M)$  is an output bound and  $h_a(M)$  an ancestral bound for  $M$ , then  $h(M) = 2 \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M) + h_o(M) + h_a(M) + 1$  is a difference bound for  $M$ .*

*Proof.* Immediate from Lemmas 44 (for  $\bar{v} = v$ ) and 46.  $\square$

We end this section by proving that every dtla  $M$  has a computable output bound. The reader who believes that this follows from [5, Theorem 4.5] can skip the rest of this section. However, the proof of the next lemma can also serve as an introduction to the pumping technique used in the next section for computing an ancestral bound for  $M$ .

**Lemma 48.** *Let  $p \in P$  such that the set  $\{M(s) \mid s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket\}$  is finite. Then  $\text{ht}(M(s)) \leq \text{maxrhs}(M) \cdot |Q|$  for every  $s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket$ .*

*Proof.* The (obvious) idea for the proof is that we consider an output path from the root to a leaf  $v$  in  $M(s)$  that is longer than  $\text{maxrhs}(M) \cdot |Q|$ . Then we find two ancestors  $\bar{u}$  and  $\tilde{u}$  of the origin node  $u$  of  $v$  where the computation of  $M$  on  $s$  is in a cycle (i.e., arrives in the same state at  $\bar{u}$  and  $\tilde{u}$ ) and produces a nonempty part of the output path. And then we pump the part of  $s$  between  $\bar{u}$  and  $\tilde{u}$ , thus pumping the path to  $v$  in  $M(s)$  and obtaining arbitrarily long output paths. For a formal proof it is convenient to build a graph  $G_M^o$  of which each path corresponds to a pair  $(u, v)$  and a state  $q$  such that there is a sentential form  $\xi$  with  $q_{0,p} \Rightarrow_s^* \xi$  and  $\xi/v = q(u)$ , i.e., such that  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$ , see Lemma 34(1). The pumping of  $s$  then corresponds to the repetition of a cycle in  $G_M^o$ .

We construct a directed edge-labeled *dependency graph*  $G_M^o$  with node set  $Q$  and an edge with label  $(j, z)$  from  $q$  to  $q'$  if there is a rule  $q(a(x_1:p_{i,1}, \dots, x_k:p_{i,k})) \rightarrow \zeta$  in  $R$  such that  $z \in V(\zeta)$  and  $\zeta/z = q'(x_j)$ . Note that  $|z| \leq \max_{\text{rhs}}(M)$ . Each path  $e_1 \cdots e_n$  in  $G_M^o$  (where each  $e_i$  is an edge) has a label in  $\mathbb{N}_+^* \times \mathbb{N}_+^*$ , obtained by the component-wise concatenation of the labels of  $e_1, \dots, e_n$ .

**Claim.** There is a path  $\pi$  from  $q_{0,p}$  to  $q$  with label  $(u, v)$  in  $G_M^o$  if and only if there is a tree  $s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket$  such that  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$ .

*Proof of Claim. ( $\Rightarrow$ )* We proceed by induction on the length of  $\pi$ . If  $\pi$  is empty, then  $q = q_{0,p}$  and  $(u, v) = (\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$ , and so  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$  for every  $s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket$  (by the definition of link). Now let  $\pi' = \pi e$  where  $\pi$  is a path from  $q_{0,p}$  to  $q$  with label  $(u, v)$ , and  $e$  is an edge from  $q$  to  $q'$  with label  $(j, z)$ . Thus,  $\pi'$  is a path from  $q_{0,p}$  to  $q'$  with label  $(uj, vz)$ . By the definition of  $G_M^o$ , the edge  $e$  is obtained from a rule  $q(a(x_1:p_1, \dots, x_k:p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  such that  $z \in V(\zeta)$  and  $\zeta/z = q'(x_j)$ . By induction,  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$ . Choose  $s_m \in \llbracket p_m \rrbracket$  for  $m \in [k]$ , and let  $s' = s[u \leftarrow a(s_1, \dots, s_k)]$ . By Lemma 34(4), we have  $\delta(s/u) = \rho(q)$  and so  $\delta(s/u) = \delta(a(s_1, \dots, s_k))$  because  $M$  is la-uniform. Hence  $\delta(s) = \delta(s')$  and every proper ancestor of  $u$  is similar in  $s$  and  $s'$ . Consequently  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_{s'}(v)$  by Lemma 41(1). Since  $\text{rhs}(q, s', u) = \zeta$ , we obtain that  $(q', uj, \#) \in \text{link}_{s'}(vz)$  from the definition of link.

*( $\Leftarrow$ )* We proceed by induction on the length of  $u$ . If  $u = \varepsilon$ , then  $q = q_{0,p}$  and  $v = \varepsilon$  by the definition of link, and so the empty path satisfies the conditions. Now let  $u' = uj$  with  $u \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  and  $j \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , and let  $s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket$  such that  $(q', u', \#) \in \text{link}_s(v')$ . By the definition of link there is a rule  $q(a(x_1:p_1, \dots, x_k:p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  such that  $a = \text{lab}(s, u)$  and  $p_m = \delta(s, um)$  for every  $m \in [k]$ ; moreover, there exist  $v \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  and  $z \in V(\zeta)$  such that  $v' = vz$ ,  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$  and  $\zeta/z = q'(x_j)$ . By induction, there is a path  $\pi$  from  $q_{0,p}$  to  $q$  with label  $(u, v)$ . By the definition of  $G_M^o$  there is an edge  $e$  from  $q$  to  $q'$  with label  $(j, z)$ . Hence  $\pi e$  is a path from  $q_{0,p}$  to  $q'$  with label  $(uj, vz) = (u', v')$ . This ends the proof of the Claim.

Suppose that  $\pi_0$  is a path from  $q_{0,p}$  to  $q$  with label  $(u_0, v_0)$ , and that  $\pi$  is a cycle from  $q$  to itself with label  $(u, v)$  such that  $v \neq \varepsilon$ . Consider the “pumped” path  $\pi_0 \pi^k$  from  $q_{0,p}$  to  $q$ , for any  $k \geq 1$ . By the Claim, there exists a tree  $s_k \in \llbracket p \rrbracket$  such that  $(q, u_0 u^k, \#) \in \text{link}_{s_k}(v_0 v^k)$ . Since  $v_0 v^k \in V(M(s_k))$  and  $|v_0 v^k| \geq k$ , we obtain that  $\text{ht}(M(s_k)) \geq k$ . That contradicts the fact that  $\{M(s) \mid s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket\}$  is finite.

Now consider a tree  $s \in \llbracket p \rrbracket$  and a leaf  $v$  of  $M(s)$ . Let  $\text{or}_s(v) = (q, u, z)$ . Then, by Lemma 39, there exists an ancestor  $\hat{v}$  of  $v$  such that  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(\hat{v})$  and  $v = \hat{v}z$ . By the Claim, there is a path  $\pi$  from  $q_{0,p}$  to  $q$  with label  $(u, \hat{v})$ . As shown above, if  $\pi$  contains a cycle, then its output label is empty. Hence there is a path  $\pi_1$  without cycles from  $q_{0,p}$  to  $q$  with label  $(u_1, \hat{v})$ . Then  $\pi_1$  has at most  $|Q| - 1$  edges. Since the second component of the label of every edge has length at most  $\max_{\text{rhs}}(M)$ , we obtain that  $|\hat{v}| \leq \max_{\text{rhs}}(M) \cdot (|Q| - 1)$ . Hence  $|v| = |\hat{v}| + |z| \leq |\hat{v}| + \max_{\text{rhs}}(M) \leq \max_{\text{rhs}}(M) \cdot |Q|$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 49.** *The number  $\max_{\text{rhs}}(M) \cdot |Q| \cdot (|P| + 2)$  is an output bound for  $M$ .*

*Proof.* For a set  $\{q_M(s) \mid s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma, \delta(s) = p_1\}$  as in Definition 43(1), with  $\rho(q) = p_1$ , we construct the dtla  $M_1$  from  $M$  by changing its  $p_1$ -axiom into  $q(x_0)$ . Application of

Lemma 48 to  $M_1$  and  $p_1$  gives the upper bound  $\text{maxrhs}(M) \cdot |Q|$  on the height of the trees in the given set.

For a set  $\{q_M(C[p]) \mid C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma, \delta(C[p]) = p_1, \delta(C[p']) = p'_1\}$  as in Definition 43(2), with  $\rho(q) = p_1$ , we first change  $M$  into  $M_1$  as before. It remains to consider the set  $\{M_1(C[p]) \mid C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma, \delta(C[p']) = p'_1\}$ . In order to apply Lemma 48, we modify the dtla  $M_1^\circ$ . We use a simple product construction to obtain from  $M_1^\circ$  an equivalent dtla  $M_2$  that “recognizes” input trees of the form  $C[p]$  and computes  $\delta(C[p'])$  by additional look-ahead. The dtla  $M_2$  has the same input alphabet  $\Sigma \cup P$  and output alphabet  $\Delta \cup (Q \times P)$  as  $M^\circ$  and  $M_1^\circ$ . It has the same set  $Q$  of states as  $M$  and  $M_1$ , and the set of look-ahead states  $P \times (P \cup \{1, 0\})$ . For its transition function  $\bar{\delta}$ , the equality  $\bar{\delta}(s) = (\bar{p}, \bar{p}')$  with  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(P)$  means the following:  $\delta(s) = \bar{p}$ , if  $\bar{p}' = 1$  then  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ , if  $\bar{p}' = 0$  then  $s$  contains more than one occurrence of  $p$  or at least one occurrence of an element of  $P - \{p\}$ , and if  $\bar{p}' \in P$  then there exists  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  such that  $s = C[p]$  and  $\delta(C[p']) = \bar{p}'$ . We leave the easy construction of  $\bar{\delta}$  to the reader. The rules of  $M_2$  are defined by:  $\text{rhs}_{M_2}(\bar{q}, a, (\bar{p}_1, \bar{p}'_1), \dots, (\bar{p}_k, \bar{p}'_k)) = \text{rhs}_{M_1^\circ}(\bar{q}, a, \bar{p}_1, \dots, \bar{p}_k)$ , and the  $(\bar{p}, \bar{p}')$ -axiom of  $M_2$  is the  $\bar{p}$ -axiom of  $M_1$ . Thus,  $M_2$  ignores the additional look-ahead and hence is equivalent to  $M_1^\circ$ . Note that  $M_2$  is initialized, but need not be la-uniform. We finally turn  $M_2$  into an equivalent initialized la-uniform dtla  $M_3$  by an obvious variant of the construction in the proof of Lemma 13, such that  $M_3$  has state set  $Q_3 = Q \times (P \cup \{1, 0\})$  and la-map  $\rho_3$  with  $\rho_3(\langle \bar{q}, \bar{p}' \rangle) = \rho(\bar{q})$ . We also leave this construction to the reader. Note that  $\text{maxrhs}(M_3) = \text{maxrhs}(M)$ . Application of Lemma 48 to  $M_3$  and  $(p_1, p'_1)$  gives the upper bound  $\text{maxrhs}(M_3) \cdot |Q_3| = \text{maxrhs}(M) \cdot |Q| \cdot (|P| + 2)$  on the height of the trees in the given set.  $\square$

## 9 A Dependency Graph for Output Branches

**Convention.** In this section we assume additionally that the initialized la-uniform dtla  $M$  is **ultralinear** with mapping  $\mu : Q \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  and **b-erasing** with graph  $E_M$ , see Section 3. These properties will be used (only) in the proof of Lemma 62.

For this  $M$  we will compute an ancestral bound  $h_a(M)$ , as defined in Definition 45. In view of this definition (and Lemma 6), it is technically convenient to combine a node  $v$  of an output tree with the sequence of labels of the proper ancestors of  $v$ , as follows.

For the output alphabet  $\Delta$ , we define the *branch alphabet*  $\Delta_{\mathcal{B}}$  by:

$$\Delta_{\mathcal{B}} = \{(d, j) \mid d \in \Delta, \text{rk}(d) \geq 1, j \in [\text{rk}(d)]\}.$$

A string in  $\Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$  is called a *branch*. For a branch  $v \in \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$  we define  $\text{nod}(v) \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  to be the sequence of numbers obtained from  $v$  by changing every  $(d, j)$  into  $j$ . For a tree  $t = d(t_1, \dots, t_k) \in T_{\Delta}(Q \times P)$  with  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $d \in (\Delta \cup (Q \times P))^{(k)}$ , and  $t_1, \dots, t_k \in T_{\Delta}(Q \times P)$ , we define the set  $B(t) \subseteq \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$  of *branches of  $t$*  inductively as follows:

$$B(d(t_1, \dots, t_k)) = \{\varepsilon\} \cup \{(d, j) v \mid j \in [k], v \in B(t_j)\}.$$

The mapping  $\text{nod}$ , restricted to  $B(t)$ , is a bijection from  $B(t)$  to  $V(t)$ . Intuitively, a branch  $v$  contains the node  $\text{nod}(v)$  and the labels of its proper ancestors (from the root to the node). For example, if  $v = (a, 2)(b, 1)(b, 3)$  is a branch of  $t$ , then it corresponds to the node  $\text{nod}(v) = (2, 1, 3)$  of  $t$ , and moreover, the root of  $t$  has label  $a$ , node 2 has label  $b$ , and node  $(2, 1)$  has label  $b$  too. For a branch  $v \in B(t)$ , we define  $t/v = t/\text{nod}(v)$ ,  $\text{lab}(t, v) = \text{lab}(t, \text{nod}(v))$ ,  $\text{link}_s(v) = \text{link}_s(\text{nod}(v))$ , and  $\text{or}_s(v) = \text{or}_s(\text{nod}(v))$ .

We will need the following lemma on branches. Roughly, it says that if  $M(C[p])$  has a branch that is longer than any branch of  $M(C[p'])$ , then a prefix of that branch corresponds to a difference node of  $M(C[p])$  and  $M(C[p'])$ . In this section, we rename  $p, p'$  into  $p_1, p_2$ .

**Lemma 50.** *Let  $C \in \mathcal{C}_{\Sigma}$  and  $p_1, p_2 \in P$ . Let  $v$  be a branch of both  $M(C[p_1])$  and  $M(C[p_2])$ , and let  $w \in \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$  be such that*

- (1)  $vw$  is a branch of  $M(C[p_1])$ , and
- (2)  $|w| > \text{ht}(M(C[p_2])/v)$ .

*Then there is a prefix  $w'$  of  $w$  such that  $\text{nod}(vw')$  is a difference node of  $M(C[p_1])$  and  $M(C[p_2])$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $|w| > \text{ht}(M(C[p_2])/v)$ ,  $vw$  is not a branch of  $M(C[p_2])$ . Let  $w'$  be the longest prefix of  $w$  such that  $vw'$  is a branch of  $M(C[p_2])$ . Since  $vw'$  is also a branch of  $M(C[p_1])$ , all proper ancestors of  $\text{nod}(vw')$  have the same label in  $M(C[p_1])$  and  $M(C[p_2])$ . By Lemma 6, it remains to show that  $\text{nod}(vw')$  has different labels in  $M(C[p_1])$  and  $M(C[p_2])$ . Since  $w' \neq w$ , there exist  $k \geq 1$ ,  $d \in \Delta^{(k)}$ , and  $j \in [k]$  such that  $w'(d, j)$  is a prefix of  $w$ . Then  $d = \text{lab}(M(C[p_1]), vw')$ . Suppose that also  $d = \text{lab}(M(C[p_2]), vw')$ . Then  $vw'(d, j)$  is a branch of  $M(C[p_2])$ , contradicting the choice of  $w'$ .  $\square$

Again in view of Definition 45, we extend the definition of link to branches, and call it blink; we are, however, only interested in triples  $(q, u, \#)$ . For  $s \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(P)$  and every  $v \in \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$ , the sets  $\text{blink}_s(v)$  of triples  $(q, u, \#)$  with  $q \in Q$  and  $u \in V(s)$ , are defined inductively as follows:

- (1) If  $\delta(s) = p$ , then  $(q_{0,p}, \varepsilon, \#) \in \text{blink}_s(\varepsilon)$ .
- (2) If  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_s(v)$  and  $\text{rhs}(q, s, u) = \zeta$ ,  
then  $(\bar{q}, ui, \#) \in \text{blink}_s(vz)$  for every  $z \in B(\zeta)$  with  $\zeta/z = \bar{q}(x_i)$ .

**Lemma 51.** *The following two statements are equivalent:*

- (1)  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_s(v)$ ;
- (2)  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{link}_s(v)$  and  $v \in B(M(s))$ .

*Proof.* Since the definition of  $\text{blink}_s$  closely follows the semantics of  $M^\circ$ , it is straightforward to show the following statement, similar to Lemma 34(1):  $(q, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_s(v)$  if and only if there is a sentential form  $\xi$  of  $M^\circ$  such that  $q_{0,\delta(s)}(\varepsilon) \Rightarrow_s^* \xi$ ,  $v \in B(\xi)$  and  $\xi/v = q(u)$ . This proves the equivalence, by Lemmas 34(1) and 2(2).  $\square$

With these definitions, we can reformulate Definition 45 as follows.

**Lemma 52.** *A number  $h_a(M) \in \mathbb{N}$  is an ancestral bound for  $M$  if and only if either  $\text{diff}(M)$  is infinite or the following holds for every  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$ ,  $p_1, p_2 \in P$ ,  $u \in V(C)$ ,  $v_1 \in B(M(C[p_1]))$ ,  $v_2 \in B(M(C[p_2]))$ , and  $q_1, q_2 \in Q$ :  
if  $(q_1, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_1]}(v_1)$ ,  $(q_2, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_2]}(v_2)$ , and  $v_2$  is a prefix of  $v_1$ ,  
then  $|v_1| - |v_2| \leq h_a(M)$ .*

Thus, to determine an ancestral bound for  $M$ , we are interested in a node  $u$  of a  $\Sigma$ -context  $C$  and in two computations of  $M$  on the path from the root to  $u$ , one with input  $C[p_1]$  and the other with input  $C[p_2]$ . The idea is, roughly, to find two ancestors  $\bar{u}$  and  $\tilde{u}$  of  $u$  in  $C$  where each of these computations is in a cycle (i.e., arrives in the same state at  $\bar{u}$  and  $\tilde{u}$ ), and then to pump the part of  $C$  between  $\bar{u}$  and  $\tilde{u}$ , leading to an infinite  $\text{diff}(M)$ . For this it is technically helpful to build a graph  $G_M$  of which each path captures two such computations:  $(q_1, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_1]}(v_1)$  and  $(q_2, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_2]}(v_2)$ , cf. Lemma 56. The pumping of  $C$  then corresponds to the repetition of a cycle in the graph  $G_M$ . In this graph, we have to distinguish between the case that  $u$  is on or off the spine of  $C$ , where the spine of a context  $C$  is the path from the root to the unique occurrence of  $\perp$ . Formally, for  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$ , the *spine* of  $C$  is the set  $\text{spi}(C) = \{u \in V(C) \mid C/u \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma\}$ .

For the dtla  $M$ , we define a finite directed edge-labeled *dependency graph*  $G_M$  whose nodes are all 3-tuples  $(q_1, q_2, b)$  with  $q_1, q_2 \in Q$  and  $b \in \{0, 1\}$ , and whose edge labels are in  $R \times R \times \mathbb{N}_+ \times \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^* \times \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$ , more precisely, in the finite set of all 5-tuples  $(r_1, r_2, j, z_1, z_2)$  such that  $r_1, r_2 \in R$ ,  $j \in [\text{rk}(a)]$  for some  $a \in \Sigma$ , and  $z_i \in \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$  is a branch of the right-hand side of  $r_i$  for  $i = 1, 2$ . The boolean  $b$  is called the *type* of the node; intuitively,  $b = 1$  stands for “on the spine”, and  $b = 0$  for “off the spine”. The edges of the dependency graph  $G_M$  are defined as follows, together with its “entry nodes”.

(Ge) For every  $p_1, p_2 \in P$ ,  $(q_{0,p_1}, q_{0,p_2}, 1)$  is an *entry node* of  $G_M$ .

- (G1) Let  $k \geq 1$ ,  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ , and  $\ell, j \in [k]$ . Let  $(q_1, q_2, 1)$  be a node of  $G_M$  and, for  $i = 1, 2$ , let  $r_i = q_i(a(x_1 : p_{i,1}, \dots, x_k : p_{i,k})) \rightarrow \zeta_i$  be a rule of  $M$ , let  $z_i \in \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$  and let  $q'_i \in Q$ , such that
- (a)  $p_{1,m} = p_{2,m}$  for all  $m \in [k] - \{\ell\}$ ,
  - (b)  $z_i \in B(\zeta_i)$  and  $\zeta_i/z_i = q'_i(x_j)$ , for  $i = 1, 2$ .
- Then there is an edge labeled  $(r_1, r_2, j, z_1, z_2)$  from  $(q_1, q_2, 1)$  to  $(q'_1, q'_2, b')$ , where  $b' = 1$  if and only if  $\ell = j$ .
- (G0) Let  $k \geq 1$ ,  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ , and  $j \in [k]$ . Let  $(q_1, q_2, 0)$  be a node of  $G_M$  and, for  $i = 1, 2$ , let  $r_i = q_i(a(x_1 : p_{i,1}, \dots, x_k : p_{i,k})) \rightarrow \zeta_i$  be a rule of  $M$ , let  $z_i \in \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$  and let  $q'_i \in Q$ , such that
- (a)  $p_{1,m} = p_{2,m}$  for all  $m \in [k]$ ,
  - (b)  $z_i \in B(\zeta_i)$  and  $\zeta_i/z_i = q'_i(x_j)$ , for  $i = 1, 2$ .
- Then there is an edge labeled  $(r_1, r_2, j, z_1, z_2)$  from  $(q_1, q_2, 0)$  to  $(q'_1, q'_2, 0)$ .

Note that there are no edges from a node of type 0 to a node of type 1. Note also that if  $(q_1, q_2, b)$  is a node of  $G_M$ , then so is  $(q_2, q_1, b)$ ; moreover, if there is an edge from  $(q_1, q_2, b)$  to  $(q'_1, q'_2, b')$  with label  $(r_1, r_2, j, z_1, z_2)$ , then there is an edge from  $(q_2, q_1, b)$  to  $(q'_2, q'_1, b')$  with label  $(r_2, r_1, j, z_2, z_1)$ .

A path  $\pi$  in  $G_M$  is a sequence  $e_1 \dots e_n$  of edges,  $n \geq 0$ , such that for every  $m \in [n-1]$  the edge  $e_{m+1}$  starts at the node where  $e_m$  ends. It has a *label*  $(u, v_1, v_2) \in \mathbb{N}_+^* \times \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^* \times \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$  obtained by the component-wise concatenation of the last three components of the labels of  $e_1, \dots, e_n$ . The *output label* of  $\pi$  is the pair of branches  $(v_1, v_2)$ , denoted by  $\text{out}(\pi)$ . We say that  $\pi$  is an *entry path* if it starts at an entry node, and that it is a  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -*path* if it is an entry path that ends at the node  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ . We will only be interested in the entry paths of  $G_M$ .

*Example 53.* Let  $\Sigma = \{\tau^{(2)}, \sigma^{(1)}, a^{(0)}, b^{(0)}\}$  and  $\Delta = \{\tau^{(2)}, \sigma_a^{(1)}, \sigma_b^{(1)}, a^{(0)}, b^{(0)}, e^{(0)}\}$ . We consider an initialized la-uniform dtla  $M$  such that for all  $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $y \in \{a, b\}$ ,  $M(\tau(\sigma^m y, \sigma^n a)) = \tau(\sigma_y^m y, M_y(\sigma^n a))$  where  $M_y(a) = a$ ,

$$M_a(\sigma^{n+1} a) = \tau(M_a(\sigma^n a), a), \text{ and } M_b(\sigma^{n+1} a) = \tau(\tau(a, M_b(\sigma^n a)), a).$$

We will not be interested in other input trees, which are translated by  $M$  into trees with at least one occurrence of  $e$ . The look-ahead states of  $M$  are  $p_a$  and  $p_b$ , which compute the label of the left-most leaf:  $\delta(y) = p_y$ ,  $\delta(\sigma, p_y) = p_y$ , and  $\delta(\tau, p_y, p_z) = p_y$  for all  $y, z \in \{a, b\}$ . The states of  $M$  are all  $q_{iy}$  with  $i \in \{0, 1, 2\}$  and  $y \in \{a, b\}$ ; the la-map of  $M$  is  $\rho(q_{0y}) = \rho(q_{1y}) = p_y$  and  $\rho(q_{2y}) = p_a$ . For  $y \in \{a, b\}$ , the axioms of  $M$  are  $A(p_y) = q_{0y}(x_0)$ , and it has the following rules, where the missing rules all have right-hand side  $e$ . First, it has the rules

$$\begin{aligned} r_{0y} &= q_{0y}(\tau(x_1 : p_y, x_2 : p_a)) \rightarrow \tau(q_{1y}(x_1), q_{2y}(x_2)), \\ r_{1y} &= q_{1y}(\sigma(x_1 : p_y)) \rightarrow \sigma_y(q_{1y}(x_1)), \\ r_{2a} &= q_{2a}(\sigma(x_1 : p_a)) \rightarrow \tau(q_{2a}(x_1), a), \text{ and} \\ r_{2b} &= q_{2b}(\sigma(x_1 : p_a)) \rightarrow \tau(\tau(a, q_{2b}(x_1)), a). \end{aligned}$$

Second, it has the rules  $q_{1y}(y) \rightarrow y$  and  $q_{2y}(a) \rightarrow a$ .

The dependency graph  $G_M$  has the four entry nodes  $(q_{0y}, q_{0z}, 1)$  for  $y, z \in \{a, b\}$ . We will not construct all edges of  $G_M$ , but just mention four interesting ones. First, by (G1) with  $\ell = j = 1$ , there is an edge  $e_{01}$  from  $(q_{0a}, q_{0b}, 1)$  to  $(q_{1a}, q_{1b}, 1)$  with label  $(r_{0a}, r_{0b}, 1, (\tau, 1), (\tau, 1))$ . Second, by (G1) with  $\ell = 1$  and  $j = 2$ , there is an edge  $e_{02}$  from  $(q_{0a}, q_{0b}, 1)$  to  $(q_{2a}, q_{2b}, 0)$  with label  $(r_{0a}, r_{0b}, 2, (\tau, 2), (\tau, 2))$ . Third, by (G1), there is an edge  $e_1$  from  $(q_{1a}, q_{1b}, 1)$  to itself with label  $(r_{1a}, r_{1b}, 1, (\sigma_a, 1), (\sigma_b, 1))$ . And finally, by (G0), there is an edge  $e_2$  from  $(q_{2a}, q_{2b}, 0)$  to itself with the label  $(r_{2a}, r_{2b}, 1, (\tau, 1), (\tau, 1)(\tau, 2))$ .  $\square$

In Lemma 56 we express the meaning of the entry paths in  $G_M$ . But we will need a stronger version of the implication (1)  $\Rightarrow$  (2) of that lemma, which we prove now. Recall from the paragraph before Theorem 15 that  $\text{fix}(M)$  is a fixed set of representatives of the equivalence classes  $\llbracket p \rrbracket$ ,  $p \in P$ .

**Lemma 54.** *Let  $\pi = e_1 \cdots e_n$ ,  $n \geq 0$ , be an entry path in  $G_M$ , where  $e_m$  is an edge of  $G_M$  for every  $m \in [n]$ . For every  $m$ ,  $0 \leq m \leq n$ , let the prefix  $e_1 \cdots e_m$  of  $\pi$  be a  $(q_1^{(m)}, q_2^{(m)}, b^{(m)})$ -path with label  $(u^{(m)}, v_1^{(m)}, v_2^{(m)})$ . Then there are  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p_1, p_2 \in P$  such that for every  $m$ ,  $0 \leq m \leq n$ , and  $i = 1, 2$ ,*

- (a)  $(q_i^{(m)}, u^{(m)}, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_i]}(v_i^{(m)})$ ,
- (b)  $b^{(m)} = 1$  if and only if  $u^{(m)} \in \text{spi}(C)$ ,
- (c) if  $m \leq n - 1$  and  $e_{m+1}$  has label  $(r_1, r_2, j, z_1, z_2)$ , then
  - (1)  $\text{rhs}(q_i^{(m)}, C[p_i], u^{(m)}) = \text{rhs}(r_i)$  and
  - (2) for every  $j' \in \mathbb{N}_+$  such that  $u^{(m)}j'$  is a node of  $C$ , if  $j' \neq j$  or  $m = n - 1$ , then  $C/u^{(m)}j' \in \text{fix}(M) \cup \{\perp\}$ .

*Proof.* We proceed by induction on the length  $n$  of  $\pi$ . If  $n = 0$ , i.e.,  $\pi$  is empty, then  $m = 0$ ,  $u^{(0)} = v_1^{(0)} = v_2^{(0)} = \varepsilon$ , and  $(q_1^{(0)}, q_2^{(0)}, b^{(0)}) = (q_{0,p_1}, q_{0,p_2}, 1)$  for  $p_1, p_2 \in P$ . Let  $C = \perp$ . It is easy to check requirements (a) and (b) for these  $C$ ,  $p_1$  and  $p_2$ ; requirement (c) holds trivially.

Now let  $\pi' = \pi e$  where  $\pi$  is a  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -path with label  $(u, v_1, v_2)$ , and where the last edge  $e$  has label  $(r_1, r_2, j, z_1, z_2)$  and ends at node  $(q'_1, q'_2, b')$ . Then  $\pi'$  is a  $(q'_1, q'_2, b')$ -path with label  $(u', v'_1, v'_2)$  where  $u' = uj$  and  $v'_i = v_i z_i$ . Let  $r_i$  be the rule  $q_i(a(x_1 : \bar{p}_{i,1}, \dots, x_k : \bar{p}_{i,k})) \rightarrow \zeta_i$  of  $M$ , hence  $k \geq 1$ ,  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ ,  $j \in [k]$ , and  $z_i \in B(\zeta_i)$  with  $\zeta_i/z_i = q'_i(x_j)$  for  $i = 1, 2$ . By induction, requirements (a), (b) and (c) hold for some  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p_1, p_2 \in P$ , for every prefix of  $\pi$ . In particular (for  $m = n$ ),  $(q_i, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_i]}(v_i)$ , and  $b = 1$  if and only if  $u \in \text{spi}(C)$ . We first consider the case where  $b = 1$ , i.e., the last edge  $e$  is obtained by (G1). Then there exists  $\ell \in [k]$  such that  $\bar{p}_{1,m} = \bar{p}_{2,m}$  for all  $m \in [k] - \{\ell\}$ , and  $b' = 1$  if and only if  $\ell = j$ . Let  $p'_1 = \bar{p}_{1,\ell}$  and  $p'_2 = \bar{p}_{2,\ell}$ . Let  $s_\ell = \perp$  and for  $m \in [k] - \{\ell\}$ , let  $s_m$  be the unique tree in  $\text{fix}(M)$  such that  $\delta(s_m) = \bar{p}_{1,m} = \bar{p}_{2,m}$ . Define  $C' = C[u \leftarrow C_a]$  where  $C_a$  is the  $\Sigma$ -context  $a(s_1, \dots, s_k)$ ; since  $u \in \text{spi}(C)$ ,  $C'$  is a  $\Sigma$ -context. We now claim that requirements (a), (b), and (c) hold for  $C'$  and  $p'_1, p'_2$ , for every prefix of  $\pi'$ .

Obviously,  $u' = uj$  is a branch of  $C'$ , and  $C'/u\ell = \perp$ . Hence,  $u' \in \text{spi}(C')$  if and only if  $\ell = j$  if and only if  $b' = 1$ . For every prefix  $e_1 \cdots e_m$  of the path  $\pi$ , by the definition of the label of a path,  $u^{(m)}$  is a prefix of  $u$ , i.e., an ancestor of  $u$ . Hence,



$u^{(m)} \in \text{spi}(C')$  if and only if  $u^{(m)} \in \text{spi}(C)$  if and only if  $b^{(m)} = 1$  (and in fact, since  $b = 1$ , they are all true). This proves requirement (b).

Since  $(q_i, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_i]}(v_i)$ , Lemmas 51 and 34(4) imply that  $\delta(C[p_i]/u) = \rho(q_i)$  which equals  $\delta(C_a[p'_i])$  by definition of  $C_a$  (and because  $M$  is la-uniform). Hence  $\delta(C[p_i]/u) = \delta(C'[p'_i]/u)$ , and so  $\delta(C[p_i]) = \delta(C'[p'_i])$  and every proper ancestor of  $u$  is similar in  $C[p_i]$  and  $C'[p'_i]$ . It now follows from Lemmas 41(1) and 51 that  $(q_i, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C'[p'_i]}(v_i)$ . Since  $\text{rhs}(q_i, C'[p'_i], u) = \text{rhs}(q_i, C_a[p'_i], \varepsilon) = \zeta_i$ , the definition of blink implies that  $(q'_i, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C'[p'_i]}(v_i z_i)$ , i.e., that  $(q'_i, u', \#) \in \text{blink}_{C'[p'_i]}(v'_i)$ . Since  $u^{(m)}$  is an ancestor of  $u$  for every prefix  $e_1 \cdots e_m$  of  $\pi$ , Lemmas 41(1) and 51 also imply that  $(q_i^{(m)}, u^{(m)}, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C'[p'_i]}(v_i^{(m)})$ . This proves requirement (a).

It should be clear from the observations in the previous two paragraphs that requirement (c) holds for every proper prefix  $e_1 \cdots e_m$  of  $\pi$ . In fact,  $u^{(m)}$  is a proper ancestor of  $u$ , and  $\text{rhs}(q, C[p_i], \hat{u}) = \text{rhs}(q, C'[p'_i], \hat{u})$  for every proper ancestor  $\hat{u}$  of  $u$  (and every  $q$ ), because  $\hat{u}$  is similar in  $C[p_i]$  and  $C'[p'_i]$ . Moreover, if  $u^{(m)} j' \neq u^{(m+1)}$  then  $C/u^{(m)} j' = C'/u^{(m)} j'$ . For the proper prefix  $\pi$  of  $\pi'$  and the edge  $e$ , requirement (c) holds by definition of the context  $C'$ .

The proof for the case where  $e$  is obtained by (G0) is similar, with  $b = b' = 0$ . Since  $u$  is not on the spine of  $C$ , we let  $s_m \in \text{fix}(M)$  with  $\delta(s_m) = \bar{p}_{1,m} = \bar{p}_{2,m}$  for every  $m \in [k]$ , and we take  $p'_1 = p_1$  and  $p'_2 = p_2$ .  $\square$

*Example 55.* For  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , consider the entry path  $\pi = e_{01}e_1^{n-1}$  in  $G_M$ , where  $M$  is the dtla of Example 53. It is a path from  $(q_{0a}, q_{0b}, 1)$  to  $(q_{1a}, q_{1b}, 1)$ , and it has label  $(1^n, (\tau, 1)(\sigma_a, 1)^{n-1}, (\tau, 1)(\sigma_b, 1)^{n-1})$  where  $1^n$  is the sequence  $(1, \dots, 1)$  of length  $n$ . Let  $\text{fix}(M) = \{a, b\}$ . Then the requirements of Lemma 54 are fulfilled for  $C = \tau(\sigma^{n-1} \perp, a)$  and for  $p_1 = p_a$  and  $p_2 = p_b$ .

Now consider the entry path  $\pi = e_{02}e_2^{n-1}$  from  $(q_{0a}, q_{0b}, 1)$  to  $(q_{2a}, q_{2b}, 0)$  with label  $(2 \cdot 1^{n-1}, (\tau, 2)(\tau, 1)^{n-1}, (\tau, 2)((\tau, 1)(\tau, 2))^{n-1})$ . The requirements of Lemma 54 for this path are fulfilled for  $C = \tau(\perp, \sigma^{n-1}a)$  and for  $p_1 = p_a$  and  $p_2 = p_b$ .  $\square$

In the next lemma we express the meaning of the entry paths in  $G_M$ .

**Lemma 56.** *Let  $q_1, q_2 \in Q$ ,  $b \in \{0, 1\}$ ,  $u \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$ , and  $v_1, v_2 \in \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$ . Then the following two statements are equivalent:*

- (1) *there is a  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -path in  $G_M$  with label  $(u, v_1, v_2)$ ;*
- (2) *there are  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p_1, p_2 \in P$  such that*
  - (a)  *$(q_1, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_1]}(v_1)$  and  $(q_2, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_2]}(v_2)$ , and*
  - (b)  *$b = 1$  if and only if  $u \in \text{spi}(C)$ .*

*Proof.* (1)  $\Rightarrow$  (2). Immediate from Lemma 54 for  $m = n$  (and disregarding (c)).

(2)  $\Rightarrow$  (1). This proof is similar to the proof of Lemma 54, but it is easier because in the induction step we can use the same  $C$ ,  $p_1$ , and  $p_2$ . Here we proceed by induction on the length of  $u$ . Let  $u = \varepsilon$ . Then  $u \in \text{spi}(C)$  and so  $b = 1$ . Since  $(q_i, \varepsilon, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_i]}(v_i)$ , it follows from the definition of blink that  $v_i = \varepsilon$ , and that  $q_i = q_{0, \bar{p}_i}$  where  $\bar{p}_i = \delta(C[p_i])$ . Hence  $(q_1, q_2, b) = (q_{0, \bar{p}_1}, q_{0, \bar{p}_2}, 1)$  is an entry node. This proves

statement (1) for this case, because the empty path from  $(q_1, q_2, b)$  to itself has label  $(\varepsilon, \varepsilon, \varepsilon)$ .

Now let  $u' = uj$  with  $u \in \mathbb{N}_+^*$  and  $j \in \mathbb{N}_+$ . Let  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p_1, p_2 \in P$  (and consider  $q'_i, v'_i$ , and  $b'$ ) such that  $(q'_i, u', \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_i]}(v'_i)$  for  $i = 1, 2$  and such that  $b' = 1$  if and only if  $u' \in \text{spi}(C)$ . By the definition of blink, there exists a rule  $r_i$  of the form  $q_i(a(x_1 : \bar{p}_{i,1}, \dots, x_k : \bar{p}_{i,k})) \rightarrow \zeta_i$  such that  $a = \text{lab}(C, u)$  with  $k \geq 1$ ,  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$ , and  $j \in [k]$ , and such that  $\bar{p}_{i,m} = \delta(C[p_i]/um)$  for every  $m \in [k]$ ; moreover, there exist  $v_i \in \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$  and  $z_i \in B(\zeta_i)$  such that  $v'_i = v_i z_i$ ,  $(q_i, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_i]}(v_i)$ , and  $\zeta_i/z_i = q'_i(x_j)$ . We first consider the case where  $u \in \text{spi}(C)$ . Then, by induction, there is a  $(q_1, q_2, 1)$ -path  $\pi$  in  $G_M$  with label  $(u, v_1, v_2)$ . Let  $\ell \in [k]$  be such that  $u\ell \in \text{spi}(C)$ ; so,  $b' = 1$  if and only if  $\ell = j$ . We observe that  $\bar{p}_{1,m} = \bar{p}_{2,m}$  for all  $m \in [k] - \{\ell\}$ , because  $C/um \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ . So, by (G1), there is an edge  $e$  labeled  $(r_1, r_2, j, z_1, z_2)$  from  $(q_1, q_2, 1)$  to  $(q'_1, q'_2, b')$ . Hence,  $\pi e$  is a  $(q'_1, q'_2, b')$ -path with label  $(uj, v_1 z_1, v_2 z_2) = (u', v'_1, v'_2)$ .

The proof for the case where  $u \notin \text{spi}(C)$  is similar. Then, by induction, there is a  $(q_1, q_2, 0)$ -path  $\pi$ . Of course  $u' \notin \text{spi}(C)$ , and so  $b' = 0$ . Since now  $\bar{p}_{1,m} = \bar{p}_{2,m}$  for all  $m \in [k]$ , there is an edge  $e$  from  $(q_1, q_2, 0)$  to  $(q'_1, q'_2, b')$  by (G0).  $\square$

For strings  $v_1, v_2$ , we define  $\text{diff}(v_1, v_2)$  to be the pair of strings  $(w_1, w_2)$  such that  $v_1 = vw_1$  and  $v_2 = vw_2$  where  $v$  is the longest common prefix of  $v_1$  and  $v_2$ . Note that if  $\text{diff}(v_1, v_2) = (w_1, w_2)$ , then  $\text{diff}(v_1 z_1, v_2 z_2) = \text{diff}(w_1 z_1, w_2 z_2)$  for all strings  $z_1$  and  $z_2$ . For a path  $\pi$  in  $G_M$ , we define  $\text{diff}(\pi) = \text{diff}(\text{out}(\pi))$ . So, if  $\pi = \pi_1 \pi_2$  then  $\text{diff}(\pi) = \text{diff}(\text{diff}(\pi_1) \cdot \text{out}(\pi_2))$ , where  $\cdot$  is component-wise concatenation.

We say that a pair of strings  $(w_1, w_2) \in \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^* \times \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$  is *ancestral* if  $w_1 = \varepsilon$  or  $w_2 = \varepsilon$  (or both). A path  $\pi$  in  $G_M$  is *ancestral* if  $\text{diff}(\pi)$  is ancestral. Thus, if  $\text{out}(\pi) = (v_1, v_2)$ , then  $\pi$  is ancestral if and only if  $v_1$  is a prefix of  $v_2$  or vice versa. Clearly, if  $\pi$  is ancestral then every prefix of  $\pi$  is ancestral: if  $\pi = \pi_1 \pi_2$  and  $\text{diff}(\pi_1)$  is not ancestral (i.e., both its components are nonempty and their first symbols differ), then  $\text{diff}(\pi_1) \cdot \text{out}(\pi_2)$  is not ancestral and  $\text{diff}(\pi) = \text{diff}(\pi_1) \cdot \text{out}(\pi_2)$ .

By Lemmas 52 and 56, and using the above definitions, we can again reformulate the definition of ancestral bound (Definition 45), as follows.

**Lemma 57.** *A number  $h_a(M) \in \mathbb{N}$  is an ancestral bound for  $M$  if and only if either  $\text{diff}(M)$  is infinite or the following holds for every ancestral entry path  $\pi$  in  $G_M$ : if  $\text{diff}(\pi) = (w, \varepsilon)$ , then  $|w| \leq h_a(M)$ .*

In the next lemma we show that every dtla  $M$  has an ancestral bound. It will be convenient to prove a slightly stronger result, where we consider more entry paths in  $G_M$  than the ancestral ones.

We say that a pair of strings  $(w_1, w_2) \in \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^* \times \Delta_{\mathcal{B}}^*$  *splits* if there exist  $d \in \Delta^{(k)}$  and  $j_1, j_2 \in [k]$  with  $j_1 \neq j_2$  such that the first symbol of  $w_i$  is  $(d, j_i)$ .<sup>21</sup> A path  $\pi$  in  $G_M$  is *nonsplitting* if  $\text{diff}(\pi)$  does not split, and *splitting* if  $\text{diff}(\pi)$  splits. Note that an ancestral pair of strings does not split, and hence every ancestral path in  $G_M$  is nonsplitting.

<sup>21</sup> The fact that  $\text{diff}(v_1, v_2)$  splits means that there exists a tree  $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Delta$  such that  $v_1$  and  $v_2$  are branches of  $t$  that correspond to distinct leaves of  $t$ .

Recall again from the paragraph before Theorem 15 that  $\text{fix}(M)$  is a fixed set of representatives of the equivalence classes  $\llbracket p \rrbracket$ ,  $p \in P$ . We define

$$\text{maxfix}(M) = \max\{\text{ht}(q_M(s)) \mid q \in Q, s \in \text{fix}(M), \rho(q) = \delta(s)\}.$$

Note that since  $\text{fix}(M)$  is finite,  $\text{maxfix}(M) \in \mathbb{N}$ .

The next lemma implies that  $\text{maxfix}(M) + \text{maxdiff}(M)$  is an ancestral bound for  $M$  when  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite, and so every dtla has an ancestral bound.

**Lemma 58.** *Let  $\pi$  be a nonsplitting entry path in  $G_M$ . If  $\text{diff}(\pi) = (w_1, w_2)$ , then  $|w_i| \leq \text{maxfix}(M) + \text{maxdiff}(M)$  for  $i = 1, 2$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\pi$  be a  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -path with label  $(u, v_1, v_2)$  and let  $\text{diff}(v_1, v_2) = (w_1, w_2)$ . For reasons of symmetry, it suffices to show that  $|w_1| \leq \text{maxfix}(M) + \text{maxdiff}(M)$ . Thus, we assume that  $w_1 \neq \varepsilon$  (and hence  $\pi \neq \varepsilon$ ). We consider two cases, depending on the value of  $b$ .

*Case 1:  $b = 1$ .* In this case we show that  $|w_1| \leq \text{maxdiff}(M)$ . By Lemma 54 there are  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p_1, p_2 \in P$  such that  $(q_i, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_i]}(v_i)$  for  $i = 1, 2$ , and  $C/u = \perp$ . Hence, cf. the proof of Lemma 51, there is a reachable sentential form  $\xi$  for  $C[p_i]$  such that  $v_i \in B(\xi)$  and  $\xi/v_i = q_i(u)$ . Since  $C[p_i]/u = p_i$ , Lemma 2(2) implies that  $v_i \in B(M(C[p_i]))$  and  $M(C[p_i])/v_i = \langle q_i, p_i \rangle$ . Let  $v$  be the longest common prefix of  $v_1$  and  $v_2$ . So  $v_i = vw_i$ . Since  $(w_1, w_2)$  does not split,  $\text{nod}(v)$  is a difference node of  $M(C[p_1])$  and  $M(C[p_2])$  by Lemma 6: each of its proper ancestors has the same label in  $M(C[p_1])$  and  $M(C[p_2])$ , but the node itself does not have the same label in  $M(C[p_1])$  and  $M(C[p_2])$ .<sup>22</sup> Hence  $|w_1| \leq \text{ht}(M(C[p_1])/v) \leq \text{maxdiff}(M)$ .

*Case 0:  $b = 0$ .* By Lemma 54, there exist  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p_1, p_2 \in P$  such that  $(q_i, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_i]}(v_i)$  and  $C/u \in \text{fix}(M)$ . Note that  $v_i$  is a branch of  $M(C[p_i])$  by Lemma 51, and that  $M(C[p_i])/v_i = q_{iM}(C/u)$  by Lemma 36(1).

First assume that  $w_2 \neq \varepsilon$ . This is similar to (1) above. Let  $v$  be the longest common prefix of  $v_1$  and  $v_2$ . So  $v_i = vw_i$ . Since  $(w_1, w_2)$  does not split and both  $w_1$  and  $w_2$  are nonempty,  $\text{nod}(v)$  is a difference node of  $M(C[p_1])$  and  $M(C[p_2])$ . So  $|w_1| \leq \text{ht}(M(C[p_1])/v) \leq \text{maxdiff}(M)$ .

Now assume that  $w_2 = \varepsilon$ , and so  $v_1 = v_2w_1$ . If  $|w_1| \leq \text{maxfix}(M)$  then we are ready. If  $|w_1| > \text{maxfix}(M)$ , then  $|w_1| > \text{ht}(q_{2M}(C/u))$  because  $C/u \in \text{fix}(M)$ , and so  $|w_1| > \text{ht}(M(C[p_2])/v_2)$ . Thus, the branch  $v_2w_1$  of  $M(C[p_1])$  is longer than any branch of  $M(C[p_2])$  with prefix  $v_2$ . By Lemma 50 (with  $v := v_2$  and  $w := w_1$ ) there is a difference node  $\text{nod}(v_2w'_1)$  of  $M(C[p_1])$  and  $M(C[p_2])$  where  $w'_1$  is a prefix of  $w_1$ . Since  $\text{nod}(v_2w'_1)$  is a node of  $M(C[p_2])$ ,  $|w'_1| \leq \text{ht}(M(C[p_2])/v_2) = \text{ht}(q_{2M}(C/u))$ . Hence,  $|w_1| \leq |w'_1| + \text{ht}(M(C[p_1])/v_2w'_1) \leq \text{ht}(q_{2M}(C/u)) + \text{maxdiff}(M)$ . This shows that  $|w_1| \leq \text{maxfix}(M) + \text{maxdiff}(M)$  by the definition of  $\text{maxfix}(M)$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 59.** *If  $\text{diff}(M)$  is finite, then the set  $\{\text{diff}(\pi) \mid \pi \text{ is a nonsplitting entry path in } G_M\}$  is finite.*

<sup>22</sup> In fact, if  $w_1$  and  $w_2$  are both nonempty, then their first symbols are  $(d_1, j_1), (d_2, j_2)$  with  $d_1 \neq d_2$ , and  $\text{nod}(v)$  has label  $d_i$  in  $M(C[p_i])$ . If  $w_2 = \varepsilon$ , then  $v = v_2$  and hence  $\text{nod}(v)$  has label  $\langle q_2, p_2 \rangle$  in  $M(C[p_2])$ ; also,  $\text{nod}(vw_1)$  has label  $\langle q_1, p_1 \rangle$  in  $M(C[p_1])$  and hence the label of  $\text{nod}(v)$  is in  $\Delta$  (because  $w_1 \neq \varepsilon$ ).

We now turn to the pumping of  $\Sigma$ -contexts, as discussed before. In terms of  $G_M$  that corresponds to the repetition of a cycle. In the next two lemmas we show that pumping (i.e., repeating) a cycle in an ancestral entry path produces again an ancestral path, and in Lemma 64 we show that this leads to infinitely many  $\text{diff}(\pi)$  values and hence to an infinite  $\text{diff}(M)$  by Corollary 59.

A path  $\pi$  in  $G_M$  is a cycle, and in particular a  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -cycle, if it is nonempty and leads from the node  $(q_1, q_2, b)$  to itself; note that every node of  $\pi$  is of type  $b$ . For every  $i \geq 1$ , we denote by  $\pi^i$  the  $i$ -fold concatenation  $\pi \cdots \pi$ .

**Lemma 60.** *Let  $\text{diff}(M)$  be finite. Let  $\pi_0$  be a  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -path in  $G_M$ , and  $\pi$  be a  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -cycle in  $G_M$  with output label  $(v_1, v_2)$  such that  $v_1 v_2 \neq \varepsilon$ . If  $\pi_0 \pi$  is nonsplitting, then it is ancestral.*

*Proof.* The idea of the proof is that if  $\pi_0 \pi$  is not ancestral, then we can pump  $\pi$  and thus obtain nonsplitting paths with arbitrarily large  $\text{diff}$  values, contradicting Corollary 59.

Let  $\text{diff}(\pi_0 \pi) = (w_1, w_2)$ . Suppose that  $\pi_0 \pi$  is not ancestral, i.e., both  $w_1$  and  $w_2$  are nonempty. Since  $(w_1, w_2)$  is nonsplitting,  $(w_1, w_2) = ((d_1, j_1)w'_1, (d_2, j_2)w'_2)$  with  $d_1 \neq d_2$ . For every  $k \geq 1$ , consider the  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -path  $\pi_0 \pi^{k+1}$ . Now  $\text{diff}(\pi_0 \pi^{k+1}) = \text{diff}(\text{diff}(\pi_0 \pi) \cdot \text{out}(\pi^k)) = \text{diff}(w_1 v_1^k, w_2 v_2^k) = ((d_1, j_1)w'_1 v_1^k, (d_2, j_2)w'_2 v_2^k)$ . Hence  $\pi_0 \pi^{k+1}$  is nonsplitting. Also since  $v_1 v_2 \neq \varepsilon$ , we obtain that  $|(d_i, j_i)w'_i v_i^k| > k$  for  $i = 1$  or  $i = 2$ . Since this holds for every  $k$ , the set  $\{\text{diff}(\pi_0 \pi^{k+1}) \mid k \geq 1\}$  is infinite, contradicting Corollary 59.  $\square$

*Example 61.* Let  $M$  be the dtla of Example 53 and let  $\pi_0 = e_{01}$  and  $\pi = e_1$ . Then  $\pi$  has output label  $((\sigma_a, 1), (\sigma_b, 1))$  and  $(\sigma_a, 1)(\sigma_b, 1) \neq \varepsilon$ . The path  $\pi_0 \pi$  has output label  $((\tau, 1)(\sigma_a, 1), (\tau, 1)(\sigma_b, 1))$  and so  $\text{diff}(\pi_0 \pi) = ((\sigma_a, 1), (\sigma_b, 1))$ , which means that  $\pi_0 \pi$  is nonsplitting but not ancestral. Indeed, consider the pumped path  $\pi_0 \pi^{k+1}$ . By Example 55, it has label  $(1^{k+2}, (\tau, 1)(\sigma_a, 1)^{k+1}, (\tau, 1)(\sigma_b, 1)^{k+1})$  and satisfies the requirements of Lemma 54 for  $C = \tau(\sigma^{k+1} \perp, a)$  and for  $p_1 = p_a$  and  $p_2 = p_b$ . By the proof of Lemma 58, that implies that the node  $\text{nod}((\tau, 1)) = 1$  is a difference node of  $M(C[p_a])$  and  $M(C[p_b])$ , and that  $M(C[p_a])/1 = (\sigma_a, 1)^{k+1} \langle q_{1a}, p_a \rangle$  is a difference tree of  $M$ . Hence  $\text{diff}(M)$  is infinite.  $\square$

In the proof of the next, technical pumping lemma we use that  $M$  is ultralinear (with mapping  $\mu : Q \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ ) and b-erasing (with graph  $E_M$ ). We note here the obvious fact that if  $e$  is an edge in  $G_M$  from  $(q_1, q_2, b)$  to  $(q'_1, q'_2, b')$ , then  $\mu(q_i) \leq \mu(q'_i)$ ; and hence the same holds for paths in  $G_M$ . Thus, if  $e$  is part of a cycle in  $G_M$ , then  $\mu(q_i) = \mu(q'_i)$ . Also, if  $e$  has output label  $(v_1, v_2)$  and  $v_i = \varepsilon$ , then there is an edge from  $q_i$  to  $q'_i$  in  $E_M$ ; and hence the same holds for paths (of the same length) in  $G_M$  and  $E_M$ . Thus, if a  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -cycle in  $G_M$  has output label  $(\bar{v}_1, \bar{v}_2)$ , then both  $\bar{v}_1$  and  $\bar{v}_2$  are nonempty.

**Lemma 62.** *Let  $\text{diff}(M)$  be finite. Let  $\pi_0$  be a  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -path in  $G_M$  and  $\pi$  be a  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -cycle in  $G_M$ . If  $\pi_0 \pi$  is nonsplitting, then  $\pi_0 \pi^k$  is nonsplitting for every  $k \geq 1$ .*

*Proof.* Clearly, it suffices to show that  $\pi_0 \pi^2$  is nonsplitting. Suppose that there exist  $\pi_0$  and  $\pi$  such that  $\pi_0 \pi^2$  is splitting. Let  $\pi = e_1 \cdots e_n$  with  $n \geq 1$  and  $e_m$  an edge of  $G_M$  for  $m \in [n]$ . Without loss of generality, we may assume that  $\pi_0 \pi e_1$  is splitting. In fact, suppose that  $e_j$  is the first edge of  $\pi$  that causes splitting, i.e.,  $\pi_0 \pi e_1 \cdots e_{j-1}$

is nonsplitting and  $\pi_0\pi e_1 \cdots e_j$  is splitting. Let  $e_{j-1}$  lead to node  $(\tilde{q}_1, \tilde{q}_2, b)$ , and let  $\tilde{\pi}_0 = \pi_0 e_1 \cdots e_{j-1}$  and  $\tilde{\pi} = e_j \cdots e_n e_1 \cdots e_{j-1}$ . Then  $\tilde{\pi}_0$  is a  $(\tilde{q}_1, \tilde{q}_2, b)$ -path,  $\tilde{\pi}$  is a  $(\tilde{q}_1, \tilde{q}_2, b)$ -cycle,  $\tilde{\pi}_0\tilde{\pi}$  is nonsplitting and  $\tilde{\pi}_0\tilde{\pi}e_j$  is splitting.

So, suppose that  $\pi_0\pi e$  is splitting, where  $e = e_1$ . Let  $\pi_0\pi$  have label  $(u, v_1, v_2)$ , let  $\text{diff}(\pi_0\pi) = \text{diff}(v_1, v_2) = (w_1, w_2)$ , and let  $\pi$  have output label  $(\bar{v}_1, \bar{v}_2)$ , where  $\bar{v}_i$  is a postfix of  $v_i$ . Since  $M$  is b-erasing,  $\bar{v}_1 \neq \varepsilon$ , and  $\bar{v}_2 \neq \varepsilon$  (because if  $\bar{v}_i = \varepsilon$ , then there is a cycle of length  $n$  from  $q_i$  to  $q_i$  in  $E_M$ ). Consequently,  $\pi_0\pi$  is ancestral by Lemma 60, i.e.,  $w_1 = \varepsilon$  or  $w_2 = \varepsilon$ . Let  $e$  end at the node  $(q'_1, q'_2, b)$  and let  $(r_1, r_2, j, z_1, z_2)$  be its label. Since  $\pi_0\pi e$  is splitting,  $\text{diff}(\pi_0\pi e) = \text{diff}(v_1 z_1, v_2 z_2) = \text{diff}(w_1 z_1, w_2 z_2) = ((d, j_1)y_1, (d, j_2)y_2)$  with  $j_1 \neq j_2$ . Assume that  $w_1 = \varepsilon$ , i.e.,  $v_2 = v_1 w_2$  (the case where  $w_2 = \varepsilon$  is analogous). So  $\text{diff}(z_1, w_2 z_2) = ((d, j_1)y_1, (d, j_2)y_2)$ . Let  $y$  be the longest common prefix of  $z_1$  and  $w_2 z_2$ , i.e.,  $z_1 = y(d, j_1)y_1$  and  $w_2 z_2 = y(d, j_2)y_2$ . Then  $v_1 y$  is the longest common prefix of  $v_1 z_1$  and  $v_2 z_2$ , because  $v_1 z_1 = v_1 y(d, j_1)y_1$  and  $v_2 z_2 = v_1 w_2 z_2 = v_1 y(d, j_2)y_2$ . Now recall that  $z_1$  is a branch of the right-hand side  $\zeta_1$  of  $r_1$  such that  $\zeta_1/z_1 = q'_1(x_j)$ . Since  $M$  is ultralinear, we have  $\mu(q_1) \leq \mu(q'_1)$ . We also have  $\mu(q'_1) \leq \mu(q_1)$ , because  $e_2 \cdots e_n$  is a path in  $G_M$  from  $(q'_1, q'_2, b)$  to  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ . Hence  $\mu(q_1) = \mu(q'_1)$ , and so, again by ultralinearity, there is no other occurrence of  $x_j$  in  $\zeta_1$ . In particular, since  $\zeta_1/y(d, j_1)y_1 = \zeta_1/z_1 = q'_1(x_j)$ , the subtree  $\zeta_1/y(d, j_2)$  does not contain  $x_j$ .

Let  $\pi' = e_2 \cdots e_n$ , so  $\pi = e\pi'$ . Let  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  be such that  $k > \text{maxdiff}(M) + \text{maxrhs}(M) + \text{maxfix}(M)$ , and let  $\pi_k$  be the pumped path  $\pi_0\pi^{k+2} = \pi_0\pi e\pi'\pi^k$ . By Lemma 54, applied to  $\pi_k$ , there exist  $C \in \mathcal{C}_\Sigma$  and  $p_1, p_2 \in P$  such that requirements (a), (b), and (c) of that lemma hold for the prefix  $\pi_0\pi$  of  $\pi_k$ . By (a),  $(q_1, u, \#) \in \text{blink}_{C[p_1]}(v_1)$ . Hence, since  $\text{rhs}(q_1, C[p_1], u) = \text{rhs}(r_1) = \zeta_1$  by (c)(1), it follows from Lemma 51 and the definition of link that  $(q_1, u, \text{nod}(y)) \in \text{link}_{C[p_1]}(v_1 y)$  and hence  $\text{or}_{C[p_1]}(v_1 y) = (q_1, u, \text{nod}(y))$ . So, by Lemma 36(2),  $M(C[p_1])/v_1 y(d, j_2) = \zeta_1/y(d, j_2)[\bar{q}(x_{j'}) \leftarrow \bar{q}_M(C[p_1]/u j') \mid \bar{q} \in Q, j' \in \mathbb{N}_+]$ . For every  $j' \in \mathbb{N}_+$  with  $j' \neq j$  and  $u j' \in V(C)$ , the node  $u j'$  is not on the spine of  $C$  because, by (b),  $u$  and  $u j$  are both on or both off the spine. Hence, by (c)(2),  $C[p_1]/u j' = C/u j' \in \text{fix}(M)$  and so  $\text{ht}(\bar{q}_M(C[p_1]/u j')) \leq \text{maxfix}(M)$ . Since as observed above,  $\zeta_1/y(d, j_2)$  does not contain  $x_j$ , it follows that  $\text{ht}(M(C[p_1])/v_1 y(d, j_2)) \leq \text{maxrhs}(M) + \text{maxfix}(M) < k$ .

Let  $\pi'$  have label  $(v'_1, v'_2)$ . Then  $\text{out}(\pi_k) = (v_1 z_1 v'_1 \bar{v}_1^k, v_2 z_2 v'_2 \bar{v}_2^k)$  and since (a) also holds for the path  $\pi_k$  itself,  $v_2 z_2 v'_2 \bar{v}_2^k$  is a branch of  $M(C[p_2])$  by Lemma 51. Recall that  $v_2 z_2 = v_1 w_2 z_2 = v_1 y(d, j_2)y_2$ . Hence  $y_2 v'_2 \bar{v}_2^k$  is a branch of  $M(C[p_2])/v_1 y(d, j_2)$ . Since  $\bar{v}_2 \neq \varepsilon$ ,  $|y_2 v'_2 \bar{v}_2^k| \geq k$ .<sup>23</sup> By Lemma 50 (with  $v := v_1 y(d, j_2)$  and  $w := y_2 v'_2 \bar{v}_2^k$ , and with  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  interchanged), there is a prefix  $w'$  of  $y_2 v'_2 \bar{v}_2^k$  such that  $\text{nod}(v_1 y(d, j_2)w')$  is a difference node of  $M(C[p_1])$  and  $M(C[p_2])$ . Since  $\text{nod}(w')$  is a node of  $M(C[p_1])/v_1 y(d, j_2)$ , we have  $|w'| \leq \text{maxrhs}(M) + \text{maxfix}(M)$ . So  $\text{ht}(M(C[p_2])/v_1 y(d, j_2)w') \geq |y_2 v'_2 \bar{v}_2^k| - |w'| \geq k - (\text{maxrhs}(M) + \text{maxfix}(M)) > \text{maxdiff}(M)$ , a contradiction.  $\square$

*Example 63.* Let  $M$  be the dtla of Example 53 and let  $\pi_0 = e_{02}$  and  $\pi = e_2$ . The path  $\pi_0\pi$  has output label  $((\tau, 2)(\tau, 1), (\tau, 2)(\tau, 1)(\tau, 2))$  and so  $\text{diff}(\pi_0\pi) = (\varepsilon, (\tau, 2))$ , which means that  $\pi_0\pi$  is ancestral. On the other hand, the path  $\pi_0\pi^2$  has output label  $((\tau, 2)(\tau, 1)(\tau, 1), (\tau, 2)(\tau, 1)(\tau, 2)(\tau, 1)(\tau, 2))$  which implies that  $\text{diff}(\pi_0\pi^2) =$

<sup>23</sup> In the case where  $w'_2 = \varepsilon$ , we need here that  $\bar{v}_1 \neq \varepsilon$ .

$((\tau, 1), (\tau, 2)(\tau, 1)(\tau, 2))$ , and so  $\pi_0\pi^2$  is splitting. Indeed, consider the pumped path  $\pi_k = \pi_0\pi^{k+2}$ , which has label  $(2 \cdot 1^{k+2}, (\tau, 2)(\tau, 1)^{k+2}, (\tau, 2)((\tau, 1)(\tau, 2))^{k+2})$  and satisfies the requirements of Lemma 54 for  $C = \tau(\perp, \sigma^{k+2}a)$  and for  $p_1 = p_a$  and  $p_2 = p_b$ , by Example 55. Now  $M(C[p_a]) = \tau(\langle q_{1a}, p_a \rangle, \tau(\tau(q_{2aM}(\sigma^k a), a), a))$  and  $M(C[p_b]) = \tau(\langle q_{1a}, p_a \rangle, \tau(\tau(a, \tau(\tau(a, q_{2bM}(\sigma^k a)), a)), a))$ . Consequently, the node  $\text{nod}((\tau, 2)(\tau, 1)(\tau, 2)) = (2, 1, 2)$  is a difference node of  $M(C[p_a])$  and  $M(C[p_b])$ , with  $M(C[p_a])/(2, 1, 2) = a$  and  $M(C[p_b])/(2, 1, 2) = \tau(\tau(a, q_{2bM}(\sigma^k a)), a)$ . So,  $\tau(\tau(a, q_{2bM}(\sigma^k a)), a)$  is a difference tree of  $M$  and has a branch  $((\tau, 1)(\tau, 2))^{k+1}$ , for every  $k$ . Hence  $\text{diff}(M)$  is infinite, which, of course, we already knew from Example 61.  $\square$

Finally, we prove that  $(2 \cdot |Q|^2 - 1) \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M)$  is an ancestral bound for  $M$ .

**Lemma 64.** *Let  $\text{diff}(M)$  be finite. Let  $\pi$  be an ancestral entry path in  $G_M$ . If  $\text{diff}(\pi) = (w, \varepsilon)$ , then  $|w| \leq (2 \cdot |Q|^2 - 1) \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M)$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose that  $|w| > (2 \cdot |Q|^2 - 1) \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M)$ . For a prefix  $\pi'$  of  $\pi$ , we will denote the first component of  $\text{diff}(\pi')$  by  $\text{diff}_1(\pi')$ . So,  $|\text{diff}_1(\varepsilon)| = 0$  and  $|\text{diff}_1(\pi)| > (2 \cdot |Q|^2 - 1) \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M)$ . We also observe that, by definition of  $G_M$ , every edge  $e$  of  $\pi$  adds at most  $\text{maxrhs}(M)$  to  $|\text{diff}_1(\pi')|$ ; formally, if  $\pi'e$  is a prefix of  $\pi$ , then  $|\text{diff}_1(\pi'e)| \leq |\text{diff}_1(\pi')| + \text{maxrhs}(M)$ , because  $\text{diff}(\pi'e) = \text{diff}(\text{diff}(\pi') \cdot \text{out}(e))$  and so  $\text{diff}_1(\pi'e)$  is a postfix of  $\text{diff}_1(\pi')z_1$  if  $\text{out}(e) = (z_1, z_2)$ .

Let  $\pi_0 = \varepsilon$  and for  $1 \leq i \leq 2 \cdot |Q|^2$ , let  $\pi_i$  be the shortest prefix of  $\pi$  such that  $|\text{diff}_1(\pi_i)| > |\text{diff}_1(\pi_{i-1})|$ . Obviously,  $\pi_{i-1}$  is a proper prefix of  $\pi_i$ . Moreover, by the above observation,  $|\text{diff}_1(\pi_i)| \leq |\text{diff}_1(\pi_{i-1})| + \text{maxrhs}(M)$  and hence  $|\text{diff}_1(\pi_i)| \leq i \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M)$ , which shows that  $\pi_i$  is well defined for every  $i \leq 2 \cdot |Q|^2$ . Note that  $\pi_i$  is ancestral and  $\text{diff}(\pi_i) = (w_i, \varepsilon)$  for some branch  $w_i$ . Since we have defined  $2 \cdot |Q|^2 + 1$  prefixes of  $\pi$ , there exist  $\pi_i$  and  $\pi_j$  with  $i < j$  that are  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -paths for the same node  $(q_1, q_2, b)$  of  $G_M$ . So,  $\pi_i$  is a prefix of  $\pi_j$  and  $|w_j| > |w_i|$ . Let  $\bar{\pi}$  be the  $(q_1, q_2, b)$ -cycle such that  $\pi_j = \pi_i\bar{\pi}$ , and let  $\text{out}(\bar{\pi}) = (v_1, v_2)$ . Then  $\text{diff}(\pi_j) = \text{diff}(\text{diff}(\pi_i) \cdot \text{out}(\bar{\pi}))$  and so  $(w_j, \varepsilon) = \text{diff}(w_i v_1, v_2)$ , i.e.,  $w_i v_1 = v_2 w_j$ . Since  $|w_i| < |w_j|$ , we obtain that  $|v_1| > |v_2|$ . We now pump  $\bar{\pi}$  and consider the path  $\pi_i \bar{\pi}^k$  for every  $k \geq 1$ . Let  $(w'_{1,k}, w'_{2,k}) = \text{diff}(\pi_i \bar{\pi}^k) = \text{diff}(\text{diff}(\pi_i) \cdot \text{out}(\bar{\pi}^k)) = \text{diff}(w_i v_1^k, v_2^k)$ . By Lemmas 62 and 60,  $\pi_i \bar{\pi}^k$  is ancestral. Since  $|w_i v_1^k| > |v_2^k|$ , it follows that  $v_2^k$  is a prefix of  $w_i v_1^k$ , and so  $w'_{2,k} = \varepsilon$  and  $w_i v_1^k = v_2^k w'_{1,k}$ . Hence  $|w'_{1,k}| = |w_i v_1^k| - |v_2^k| = |w_i| + k(|v_1| - |v_2|) \geq k$ . Since this holds for every  $k \geq 1$ , it contradicts Corollary 59.  $\square$

**Theorem 65.** *The number  $(2 \cdot |Q|^2 - 1) \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M)$  is an ancestral bound for  $M$ .*

*Proof.* Immediate from Lemmas 57 and 64.  $\square$

We now present our second main result.

**Theorem 66.** *It is decidable for a total ultralinear bounded erasing dtla  $M$  whether there exists a dtop  $N$  such that  $\llbracket M \rrbracket = \llbracket N \rrbracket$ , and if so, such a dtop  $N$  can be constructed.*

*Proof.* We use Corollary 27 for the class  $\mathcal{U}$  of total ultralinear b-erasing dtlas. We first consider an initialized and la-uniform  $M \in \mathcal{U}$ . As observed in Section 8, an output

bound  $h_o(M)$  for  $M \in \mathcal{U}$  can be computed from  $M$ ; in fact, by Theorem 49,  $h_o(M) = \text{maxrhs}(M) \cdot |Q| \cdot (|P| + 2)$  is an output bound for  $M$ . By Theorem 65,  $h_a(M) = (2 \cdot |Q|^2 - 1) \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M)$  is an ancestral bound for  $M$  (which, of course, can be computed from  $M$ ). Finally, Theorem 47 shows that  $2 \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M) + h_o(M) + h_a(M) + 1 = 1 + \text{maxrhs}(M) \cdot (|Q| \cdot (|P| + 2) + 2 \cdot |Q|^2 + 1)$  is a difference bound for  $M$ , and hence so is the larger number  $1 + 2 \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M) \cdot (|Q| + |P|)^2$ . It now follows from Lemmas 11 and 13 that we obtain a difference bound for *every*  $M \in \mathcal{U}$  by first changing  $\text{maxrhs}(M)$  into  $2 \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M)$  and  $|Q|$  into  $(|Q| + 1) \cdot |P|$ , and then taking the maximum with  $\text{maxrhs}(M)$  (cf. the paragraphs after Lemmas 11 and 13). Thus,  $\mathcal{U}$  has Property (H) of Corollary 27 with the computable mapping  $h : \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $h(M) = 1 + 4 \cdot \text{maxrhs}(M) \cdot (|Q| + 2)^2 \cdot |P|^2$ .  $\square$

The same result holds for a total output-monadic dtla  $M$ , where *output-monadic* means that  $\text{rk}(d) \leq 1$  for every  $d \in \Delta$ . The reason is that Lemma 62, which is the only result that needs the assumption that  $M$  is ultralinear and bounded erasing, is trivial if  $M$  is output-monadic, because in that case every entry path in  $G_M$  is nonsplitting. Note that every output-monadic dtla is (ultra)linear, but not necessarily bounded erasing. This result is a slight generalization of the result of [3] for string transducers (more precisely, subsequential functions).

The same result of Theorem 66 also holds for a total initialized depth-uniform dtla  $M$ , where *depth-uniform* means that for every  $a \in \Sigma^{(k)}$  and every  $j \in [k]$  there exists a number  $d_{a,j} \in \mathbb{N}$  such that for every rule  $q(a(x_1 : p_1, \dots, x_k : p_k)) \rightarrow \zeta$  and every  $z \in V(\zeta)$ , if  $\zeta/z = q'(x_j)$  then  $|z| = d_{a,j}$ . In other words, every translation of the  $j$ th child of a node with label  $a$  is at the same depth of the right-hand side of every rule for  $a$ . This property implies that  $|z_1| = |z_2|$  for every label  $(r_1, r_2, j, z_1, z_2)$  of an edge of  $G_M$ , hence  $|v_1| = |v_2|$  for every output label  $(v_1, v_2)$  of an entry path in  $G_M$ , and hence  $\text{diff}(\pi) = (\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$  for every ancestral entry path in  $G_M$ . Thus,  $h_a(M) = 0$  is an ancestral bound for  $M$ , by Lemma 57.

*Example 67.* Let  $\Sigma = \{\sigma^{(1)}, \tau^{(1)}, a^{(0)}, b^{(0)}\}$  and  $\Delta = \{\sigma_a^{(2)}, \sigma_b^{(2)}, a^{(0)}, b^{(0)}\}$ . Consider the initialized la-uniform dtla  $M$  that translates every input tree  $s$  with  $n$  occurrences of  $\sigma$  into the full binary tree of height  $n$  over  $\{\sigma_y, y\}$ , where  $y$  is the label of the leaf of  $s$ . For instance,  $M(\sigma\tau\sigma a) = \sigma_a(\sigma_a(a, a), \sigma_a(a, a))$ . It has look-ahead states  $p_a$  and  $p_b$ , with the usual transitions, and states  $q_a$  and  $q_b$ . For  $y \in \{a, b\}$ , it has axioms  $A(p_y) = q_y(x_0)$  and rules  $q_y(\sigma(x_1 : p_y)) \rightarrow \sigma_y(q_y(x_1), q_y(x_1))$ ,  $q_y(\tau(x_1 : p_y)) \rightarrow q_y(x_1)$ , and  $q_y(y) \rightarrow y$ . Clearly  $M$  is depth-uniform, with  $d_{\sigma,1} = 1$  and  $d_{\tau,1} = 0$ . Note that  $M$  is neither ultralinear nor b-erasing.  $\square$

The depth-uniform property can be weakened by defining it as follows: there is a number  $h'_a(M) \in \mathbb{N}$  such that for every entry path  $\pi$  in  $G_M$ , if  $\text{out}(\pi) = (v_1, v_2)$  then  $||v_1| - |v_2|| \leq h'_a(M)$ , i.e., the distance between  $|v_1|$  and  $|v_2|$  is at most  $h'_a(M)$ . Clearly, such a number  $h'_a(M)$  is an ancestral bound for  $M$  by Lemma 57. This weak depth-uniform property is decidable, and if it holds then a bound  $h'_a(M)$  can be computed. In fact, it is easy to see that  $M$  is weak depth-uniform if and only if  $|v_1| = |v_2|$  for every output label  $(v_1, v_2)$  of a cycle in  $G_M$ . This can be checked by considering all simple cycles in  $G_M$ , i.e., cycles in which no node of  $G_M$  occurs more than once. The bound

$h'_a(M)$  can then be computed by considering all entry paths in  $G_M$  that do not contain a cycle.

## 10 Conclusion

In Theorem 26 we have given a general algorithm to decide for a given total dtla  $M$  with a given difference bound, whether  $M$  is equivalent to a dtop, and if so, to construct such a dtop. In Sections 8 and 9 we have shown that a difference bound can be computed for total dtlas that are ultralinear and bounded erasing, or output-monadic, or initialized and depth-uniform.

We would like to extend our results to the non-total case where a dtla realizes a partial function, to the case where the dtla and the dtop are restricted to a given regular tree language, and to more general dtlas (preferably to all dtlas, of course). Even more generally, we would like to have an algorithm that for a given dtla constructs an equivalent dtla with a minimal number of look-ahead states.

As observed at the end of the Introduction, regular look-ahead can always be removed from a macro tree transducer [10]. Hence another more general question is: Is it decidable for a given macro tree transducer whether it is equivalent to a top-down tree transducer?

## References

1. R. Alur and L. D’Antoni. Streaming tree transducers. In *ICALP (2)*, pages 42–53, 2012.
2. J. Berstel. *Transductions and Context-Free Languages*. Teubner-Verlag, 1979.
3. C. Choffrut. Une caractérisation des fonctions séquentielles et des fonctions sous-séquentielles en tant que relations rationnelles. *Theor. Comput. Sci.*, 5(3):325–337, 1977.
4. F. Drewes. *Grammatical Picture Generation – A Tree-Based Approach*. Springer, 2006.
5. F. Drewes and J. Engelfriet. Decidability of the finiteness of ranges of tree transductions. *Inf. Comput.*, 145(1):1–50, 1998.
6. J. Engelfriet. Top-down tree transducers with regular look-ahead. *Mathematical Systems Theory*, 10:289–303, 1977.
7. J. Engelfriet and S. Maneth. Macro tree transducers, attribute grammars, and MSO definable tree translations. *Inf. Comput.*, 154(1):34–91, 1999.
8. J. Engelfriet, S. Maneth, and H. Seidl. Deciding equivalence of top-down XML transformations in polynomial time. *J. Comput. Syst. Sci.*, 75(5):271–286, 2009.
9. J. Engelfriet, G. Rozenberg, and G. Slutzki. Tree transducers, L systems, and two-way machines. *J. Comput. Syst. Sci.*, 20(2):150–202, 1980.
10. J. Engelfriet and H. Vogler. Macro tree transducers. *J. Comput. Syst. Sci.*, 31(1):71–146, 1985.
11. Z. Ésik. Decidability results concerning tree transducers I. *Acta Cybern.*, 5:1–20, 1981.
12. E. Filiot and F. Servais. Visibly pushdown transducers with look-ahead. In *SOFSEM*, pages 251–263, 2012.
13. Z. Fülöp, A. Kühnemann, and H. Vogler. A bottom-up characterization of deterministic top-down tree transducers with regular look-ahead. *Inf. Process. Lett.*, 91(2):57–67, 2004.
14. H. Hosoya. *Foundations of XML Processing – The Tree-Automata Approach*. Cambridge University Press, 2010.



15. K. Knight and J. Graehl. An overview of probabilistic tree transducers for natural language processing. In *CICLing*, pages 1–24, 2005.
16. A. Lemay, S. Maneth, and J. Niehren. A learning algorithm for top-down XML transformations. In *PODS*, pages 285–296, 2010.
17. A. Maletti. Tree transformations and dependencies. In *MOL*, volume 6878 of *Lecture Notes in Artificial Intelligence*, pages 1–20. Springer, 2011.
18. A. Maletti, J. Graehl, M. Hopkins, and K. Knight. The power of extended top-down tree transducers. *SIAM J. Comput.*, 39(2):410–430, 2009.
19. S. Maneth and F. Neven. Structured document transformations based on XSL. In *DBPL*, pages 80–98, 1999.
20. W. Martens and F. Neven. Frontiers of tractability for typechecking simple XML transformations. *J. Comput. Syst. Sci.*, 73(3):362–390, 2007.
21. W. Martens, F. Neven, and M. Gyssens. Typechecking top-down XML transformations: Fixed input or output schemas. *Inf. Comput.*, 206(7):806–827, 2008.
22. W. C. Rounds. Mappings and grammars on trees. *Mathematical Systems Theory*, 4(3):257–287, 1970.
23. J. W. Thatcher. Generalized sequential machine maps. *J. Comput. Syst. Sci.*, 4(4):339–367, 1970.
24. A. van Deursen, P. Klint, and F. Tip. Origin tracking and its applications. In *Language Prototyping – An Algebraic Specification Approach*, pages 249–294. World Scientific, 1996.